



# CITROËN C3



HANDBOOK

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

# On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



## MyCITROËN

Find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with the manufacturer.

---

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- > the language,
  - > the vehicle, its body style,
  - > the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.
- 

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.



This handbook has been designed to help you make the most of your C3 in all circumstances and in complete safety.

Take the time to read through it so as to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole C3 range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

#### Key



safety warning



additional information



contributes to the protection of the environment

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,  
a complete product range,  
bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,  
for a modern and creative approach to mobility.  
We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,  
getting to know each system,  
each control, each setting,  
makes your trips, your journeys  
more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

Overview ■

Eco-driving ■

Instruments **1**

Instrument panels	11
Indicator and warning lamps	15
Indicators	31
Distance recorders	39
Configuration of the equipment on vehicles without a screen	40
Monochrome screen C	41
Touch screen	44
Trip computer	50
Setting the date and time	54

Access **2**

Remote control	56
Keyless Entry and Starting	59
Back-up procedures	64
Doors	68
Boot	69
Central locking	70
Alarm	72
Electric windows	74

Ease of use and comfort **3**

Front seats	76
Rear seats	79
Steering wheel adjustment	82
Ventilation	83
Heating	85
Manual air conditioning	86
Automatic air conditioning	88
Front demist - defrost	92
Rear screen demist - defrost	93
Courtesy lamp	94
Panoramic sunroof	95
Boot lamp	95
Interior fittings	96
Boot fittings	100
Rear parcel shelf (enterprise version)	102

Lighting and visibility **4**

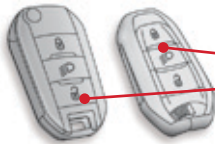
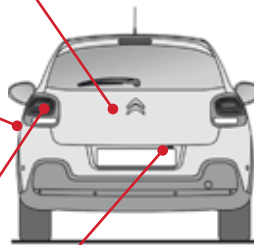

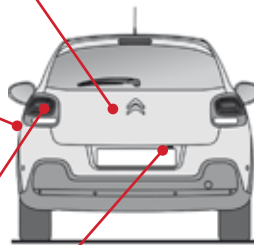

Mirrors	103
Lighting control	105
Direction indicators	108
Automatic illumination of headlamps	109
Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps	110
Headlamp beam height adjustment	112
Wiper control stalk	113
Automatic rain sensitive wipers	115

Safety **5**

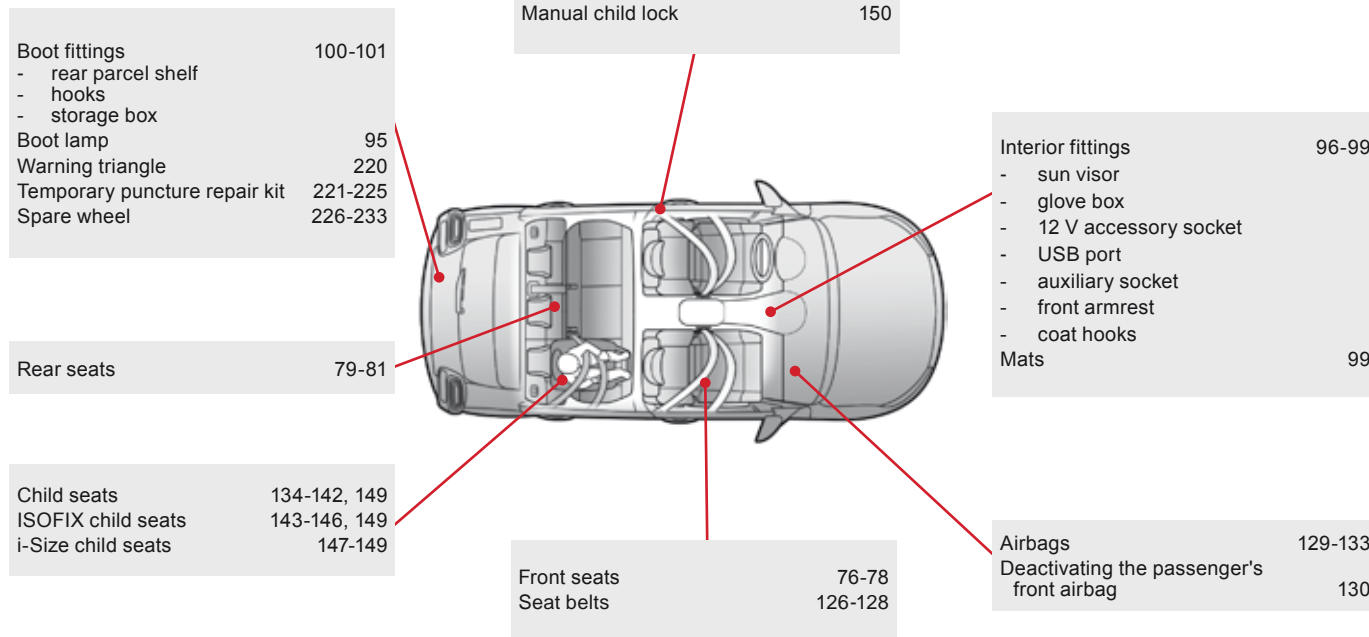
General safety recommendations	117
Hazard warning lamps	118
Horn	118
Emergency or assistance	119
Electronic stability control (ESC)	123
Seat belts	126
Airbags	129
Child seats	134
Deactivating the passenger front airbag	137
ISOFIX child seats	143
i-Size child seats	147
Child lock	150

<hr style="border: 1px solid #8B4513; margin-bottom: 10px;"/> <b>Driving</b> <b>6</b>	<hr style="border: 1px solid #00A0C0; margin-bottom: 10px;"/> <b>Practical information</b> <b>7</b>	<hr style="border: 1px solid #008080; margin-bottom: 10px;"/> <b>Technical data</b> <b>9</b>
<p>Driving recommendations 151</p> <p>Starting / Switching off the engine with the key 153</p> <p>Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting 156</p> <p>Parking brake 159</p> <p>5-speed manual gearbox 160</p> <p>Automatic gearbox (EAT6) 161</p> <p>Gear shift indicator 165</p> <p>Hill start assist 166</p> <p>Stop &amp; Start 167</p> <p>Memorising speeds 170</p> <p>Speed limit recognition 171</p> <p>Speed limiter 175</p> <p>Cruise control 178</p> <p>Fatigue detection system 182</p> <p>Lane Departure Warning System 183</p> <p>Blind Spot Monitoring System 184</p> <p>Parking sensors 187</p> <p>Reversing camera 189</p> <p>Under-inflation detection 190</p> <p>ConnectedCAM CITROËN™ 193</p>	<p>Fuel tank 196</p> <p>Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 198</p> <p>Snow chains 200</p> <p>Very cold climate screen 201</p> <p>Towing a trailer 202</p> <p>Energy economy mode 203</p> <p>Changing a wiper blade 204</p> <p>Roof bars 205</p> <p>Bonnet 206</p> <p>Petrol engines 207</p> <p>Diesel engines 208</p> <p>Checking levels 209</p> <p>Checks 213</p> <p>AdBlue® and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel) 215</p> <p>AIRBUMP® protectors 219</p>	<p>Engines 254</p> <p>Weights 254</p> <p>Dimensions 257</p> <p>Identification markings 258</p>
<hr style="border: 1px solid #808080; margin: 0 auto; width: 20%;"/> <p style="margin: 0 auto;">Alphabetical index ■</p>		
<hr style="border: 1px solid #808080; margin: 0 auto; width: 20%;"/>		
<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; display: inline-block;"> <p><b>i</b> For the audio and telematic systems, refer to the supplement to the handbook or go to the following internet address: <a href="http://service.citroen.com/ddb/">http://service.citroen.com/ddb/</a></p> </div>		
<hr style="border: 1px solid #808080; margin-bottom: 10px;"/> <b>In the event of a breakdown</b> <b>8</b>		
<p>Warning triangle 220</p> <p>Running out of fuel (Diesel) 220</p> <p>Temporary puncture repair kit 221</p> <p>Spare wheel 226</p> <p>Changing a bulb 234</p> <p>Changing a fuse 241</p> <p>12 V battery 248</p> <p>Towing 252</p>		

# Exterior

<p><b>Boot</b> 69</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- opening / closing</li> <li>- back-up release</li> </ul> <p><b>Temporary puncture repair kit</b> 221-225</p> <p><b>Spare wheel</b> 226-233</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- tools</li> <li>- removing / refitting</li> </ul> <p><b>Snow chains</b> 200</p>		<p><b>Remove control key / Keyless Entry and Starting system</b> 56-67</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- locking / unlocking the vehicle</li> <li>- battery</li> </ul> <p><b>Starting / switching off the engine</b> 153-158</p>
<p><b>Fuel tank, misfuel prevention (Diesel)</b> 196-199</p> <p><b>Running out of Diesel fuel</b> 220</p> <p><b>AdBlue® tank</b> 215-218</p> <p><b>AIRBUMP® protectors</b> 219</p>		<p><b>Glass panoramic sunroof</b> 95</p> <p><b>ConnectedCAM CITROËN™</b> 193-194</p> <p><b>Roof bars</b> 205</p>
<p><b>Changing bulbs</b> 238-239</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- rear lamps</li> <li>- 3<sup>rd</sup> brake lamp</li> <li>- number plate lamps</li> </ul>		<p><b>Wiper control stalk</b> 113-116</p> <p><b>Changing a wiper blade</b> 204</p>
<p><b>Reversing camera</b> 189</p> <p><b>Parking sensors</b> 187-188</p> <p><b>Towbar</b> 152, 202</p> <p><b>Towing</b> 252-253</p>		<p><b>Door mirrors</b> 103</p> <p><b>Blind Spot Monitoring System</b> 184-186</p>
<p><b>Electronic stability control (ESC): ABS, EBFD, EBA, ASR, DSC</b> 123-125</p> <p><b>Under-inflation detection</b> 190-192</p> <p><b>Tyre pressures</b> 258</p>		<p><b>Doors</b> 68</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- opening / closing</li> </ul> <p><b>Central locking</b> 70</p> <p><b>Electric windows</b> 74-75</p> <p><b>Alarm</b> 72-73</p>
		<p><b>Lighting control stalk</b> 105-112</p> <p><b>Guide-me-home lighting</b> 111</p> <p><b>Daytime running lamps</b> 110</p> <p><b>Headlamp beam height adjustment</b> 112</p> <p><b>Changing bulbs</b> 234-237</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- front lamps</li> <li>- foglamps</li> <li>- direction indicator repeaters</li> </ul>

# Interior



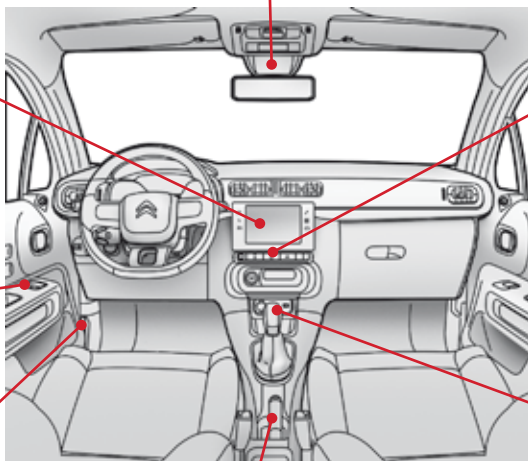
# Instruments and controls

Courtesy lamp	94
Rear view mirror	104
Emergency or assistance call	119-122
ConnectedCAM CITROËN™	193-194

Touch screen	44-49
Monochrome screen C	41-43
Setting the date / time	54-55

Door mirrors	103
Blind Spot Monitoring System	184-186
Electric windows	74-75

Opening the bonnet	206
--------------------	-----



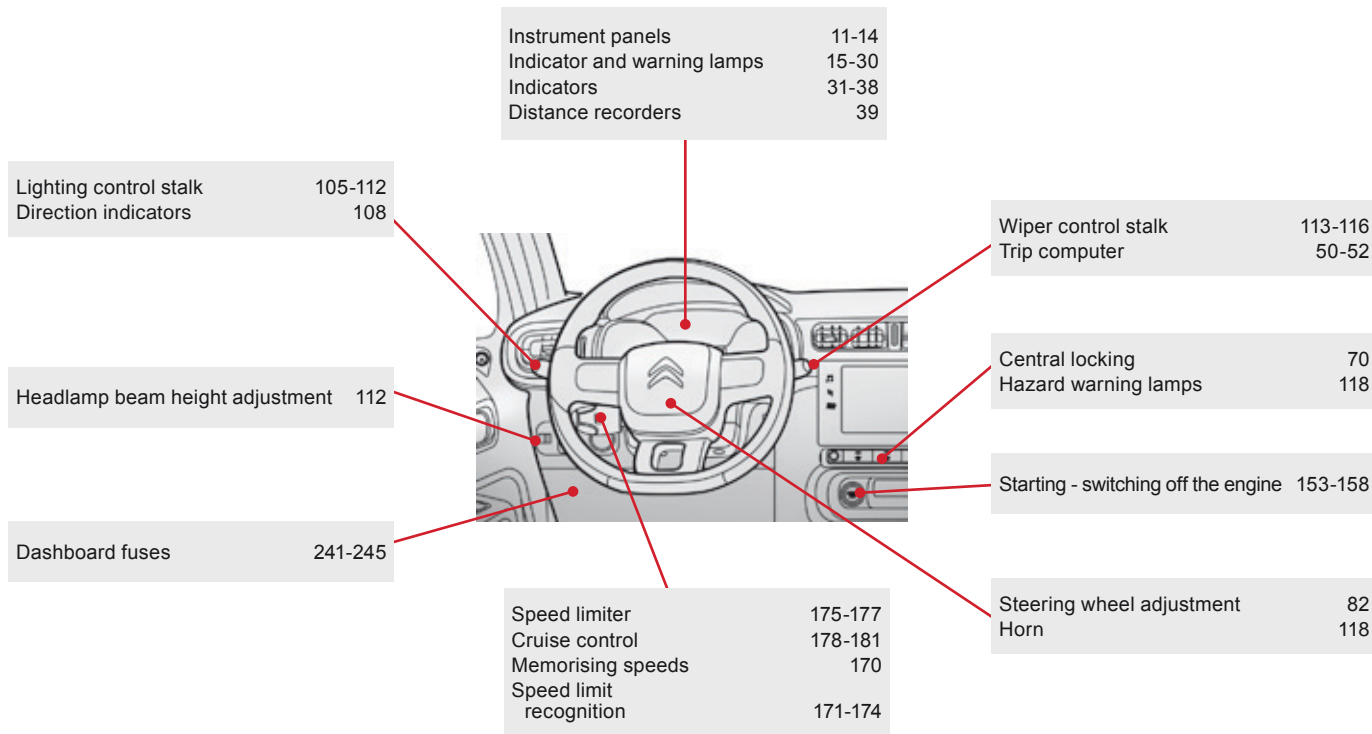
Ventilation	83-84
Heating	85
Manual air conditioning	86-87
Automatic air conditioning	88-91
Front demist / defrost	92
Rear screen demist / defrost	93

5-speed manual gearbox	160
Automatic gearbox	161-164
Gear efficiency indicator	165
Hill start assist	166
Stop & Start	167-169

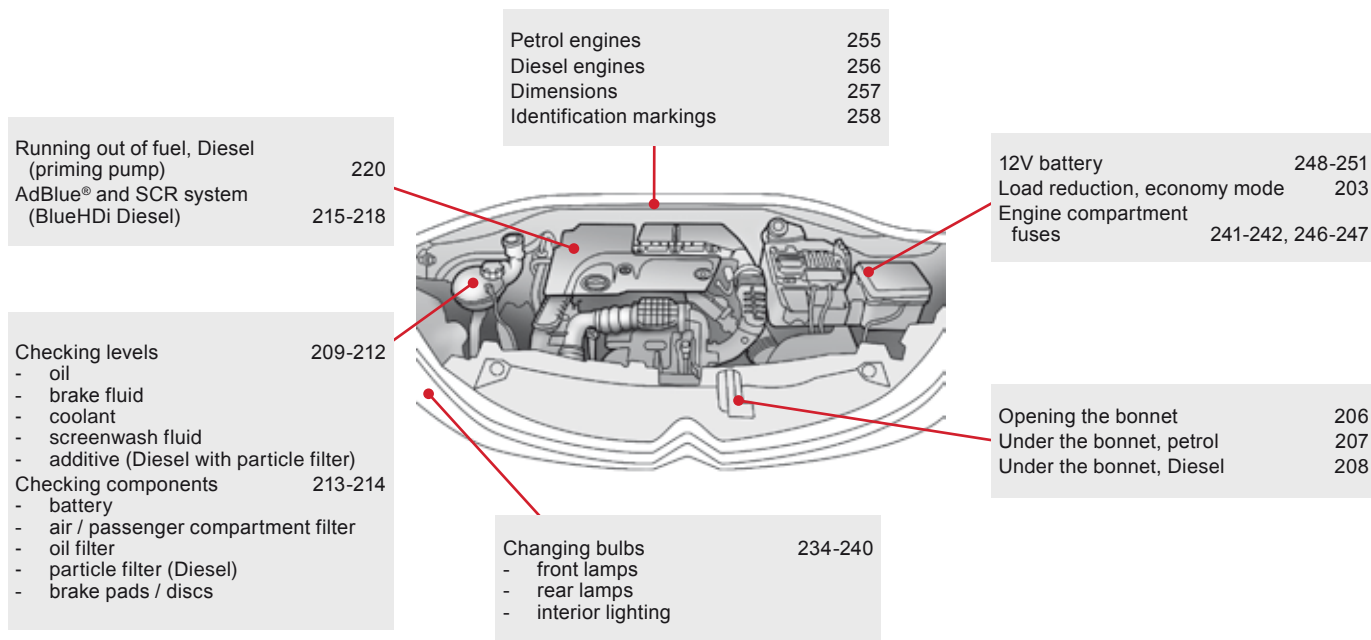
Parking brake	159
---------------	-----



# Instruments and controls (cont.)



# Maintenance - Technical data



## Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

### Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

### Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

## Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.  
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference. Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

## Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

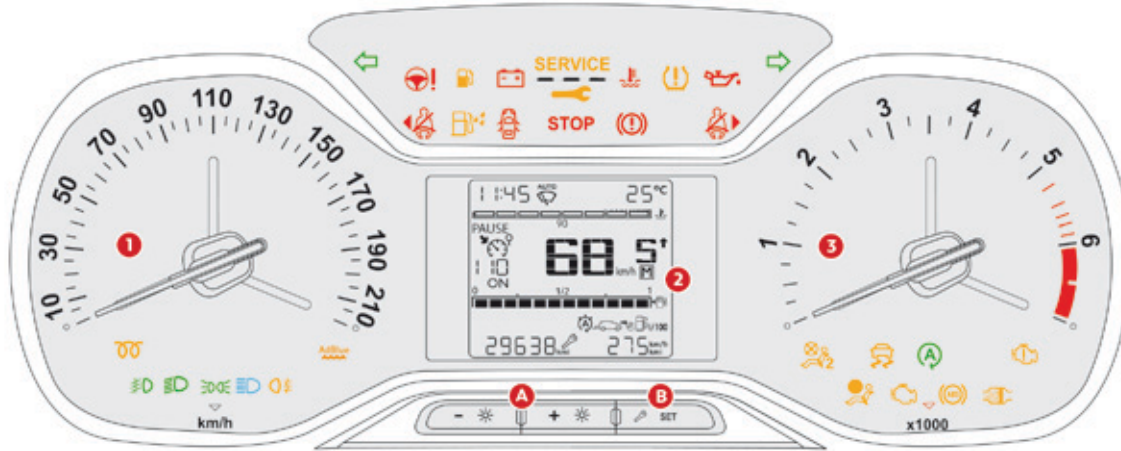
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrogen oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

# Symbols LCD instrument panel



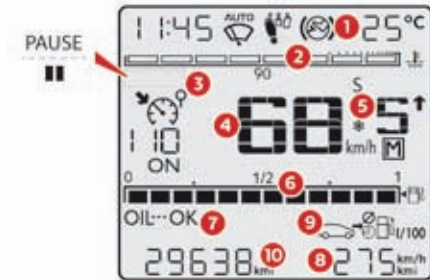
## Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
2. Display.
3. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).

## Control buttons

- A. Main lighting dimmer.  
Depending on version: scrolling through a menu, a list; changing a value.
- B. Recall of the servicing information or of the driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.  
Reset of the function selected (service indicator or trip distance recorder).  
Depending on version: access to the configuration menu (long press), confirmation of a choice (short press).

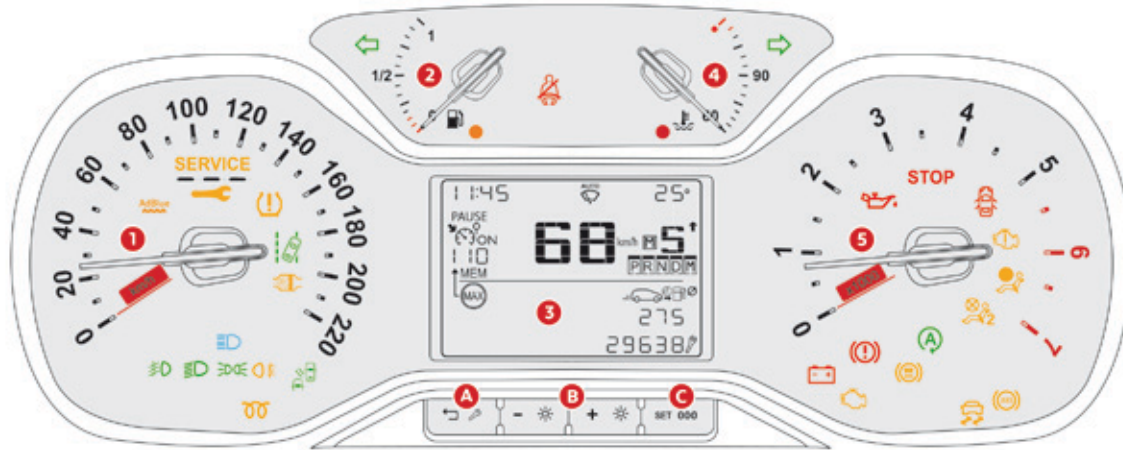
## Display



1. Exterior temperature.
2. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
3. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Gear efficiency indicator and/or gear selector position, gear and Sport and Snow modes for an automatic gearbox.
6. Fuel level.

7. Engine oil level indicator (appears for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, then disappears).
8. Service indicator or Range related to the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km) then, trip distance recorder (miles or km).
9. Trip computer.
10. Total distance recorder (miles or km).

## Text LCD instrument panel



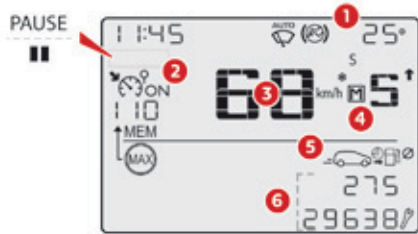
### Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
2. Fuel level indicator.
3. Display.
4. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
5. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).

### Control buttons

- A. Reset of the service indicator.  
Recall of the current servicing information, or the driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.  
Depending on version: go back a level, abandon the operation in progress.
- B. Main lighting dimmer.  
Depending on version: scrolling through a menu, a list; changing a value.
- C. Reset of the trip distance recorder and the trip.  
Depending on version: access to the configuration menu (long press), confirmation of a choice (short press).

## Display



1. Exterior temperature.
2. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.  
Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Gear efficiency indicator and/or gear selector position, gear and Sport and Snow modes for an automatic gearbox.
5. Trip computer and Stop & Start time counter.

6. Display zone: trip distance recorder (miles or km), service indicator or Range related to the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km), total distance recorder, warning messages or system status messages.

If your vehicle is not fitted with an audio system or a touch screen, you can also configure certain equipment using this display.

For more information on the **Configuration of the equipment on vehicles without a screen**, refer to the corresponding section.



# Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation, switched off or has a fault.

## When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds in the instrument panel when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

**i** When switching on the ignition, the displays in the instrument panel appear dynamically and progressively. This is normal operation.

## Associated warnings

The switching on of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The warning lamps may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.






**!** Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two modes: fixed (continuous) or flashing.

Only by relating the type of illumination to the operation of the vehicle can it be determined whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred. In the event of a fault, the illumination of the warning lamp may be accompanied by a message.





Refer to the tables in the following pages for more information.



## Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation. It may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 <b>Left-hand direction indicator</b>	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed down.	
 <b>Right-hand direction indicator</b>	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed up.	
 <b>Sidelamps</b>	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
 <b>Dipped beam headlamps</b>	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
 <b>Main beam headlamps</b>	fixed.	The lighting stalk has been pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.

**i** For more information on the **Lighting control stalk**, refer to the corresponding section.


Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Front foglamps	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk. Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	Rear foglamp	fixed.	The rear foglamp has been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk. Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk to the rear to switch off the rear foglamp.
	Diesel engine pre-heating	fixed.	When the ignition is switched on with a key in the ignition switch or a starting instruction made using the "START/STOP" button, the engine temperature makes engine pre-heating necessary. The period of illumination of the indicator lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). With an ignition switch and key, wait until the indicator lamp goes off before starting. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic gearbox, or the clutch pedal is pressed fully down with a manual gearbox. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	Parking brake	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released. Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the <b>Parking brake</b> , refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Blind spot monitoring system*</b>	fixed.	The system has been activated.	For more information on the <b>Blind spot monitoring system</b> , refer to the corresponding section.
	<b>Stop &amp; Start</b>	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams,...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable, or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on <b>Stop &amp; Start</b> , refer to the corresponding section.

\* Only on the Text LCD instrument panel.

## Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This may be accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Passenger's airbag system</b>	fixed.  The control switch, located at the right-hand end of the dashboard is set to the <b>OFF</b> position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is an operating fault with the airbags (Airbag warning lamp on).	Turn the control switch to the " <b>ON</b> " position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position on the front passenger seat.


## Warning lamps





When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further using the associated message.



If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
<b>STOP</b>	<b>STOP</b>	fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	Illumination of this warning lamp is related to a serious fault detected with the engine, the braking system, the power steering, etc., or a major electrical fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
<b>SERVICE</b> or 	<b>Service</b>	temporarily, accompanied by the display of a message.  One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off). For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Braking</b>	fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid listed by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)</b>	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	<b>Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)</b>	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.





Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
 <b>Engine diagnostic system</b>	fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.	
	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
	fixed, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp.	A minor engine fault has been detected.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	A major engine fault has been detected.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
 <b>Power steering*</b>	fixed.	Major power steering fault.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	


\* Only on the Symbols LCD instrument panel.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Foot on the clutch*</b>	fixed.	In the STOP mode of Stop & Start, changing to START mode is denied because the clutch pedal is not fully down.
	<b>Door(s) open</b>	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	Speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), a door or the boot is not properly closed.
		fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	Speed above 6 mph (10 km/h), a door or the boot is not properly closed.

\* Only on the Symbols LCD instrument panel.




Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Particle filter (Diesel)</b>	This indicates that the particle filter is starting to become saturated.	As soon as driving conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 35 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. For more information on <b>Checks</b> and in particular those of the particle filter, refer to the corresponding section.
		This indicates the low level of the additive reservoir.	Have the reservoir topped up as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. For more information on <b>Checking levels</b> and in particular the additive level, refer to the corresponding section.
	<b>Lane departure warning system*</b>	flashing (orange), accompanied by an audible signal.	Turn the wheel in the other direction to return to the correct trajectory. For more information, refer to the corresponding section.
		A lane marking is being crossed, on the right.	
		A lane marking is being crossed, on the left.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The lane departure warning system has a fault.






\* Only on the Text LCD instrument panel.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 <b>AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)</b>	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Have the AdBlue® topped up as soon as possible: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
	flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must <b>top up the AdBlue®</b> to <b>avoid a breakdown</b> or go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
	flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must <b>top up the AdBlue®</b> or go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.








For topping up or for more information on **AdBlue®** and the **SCR** system, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 +  + 	<b>SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)</b> fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
	flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop <b>without delay, to avoid a breakdown.</b>
	flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you <b>must</b> call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.




Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 	<b>Low fuel level</b>	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	<p>When it first comes on there remains <b>approximately 5 litres of fuel</b> in the tank.</p> <p>You are then using the fuel reserve.</p> <p>You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.</p> <p>Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the level drops towards "0".</p> <p>Fuel tank capacity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Petrol: approximately 45 litres.</li> <li>- Diesel: approximately 42 or 50 litres (depending on version).</li> </ul> <p>Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.</p>
	<b>Seat belt(s) not fastened / unfastened**</b>	fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.
	<b>Front left seat belt not fastened / unfastened*</b>		The front occupant's seat belt on the left has not been fastened or has been unfastened.
	<b>Front right seat belt not fastened / unfastened*</b>		The front occupant's seat belt on the right has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

\* Only on the Symbols LCD instrument panel.

\*\* Only on the Text LCD instrument panel.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Airbags</b>	on temporarily.	This warning lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off. This warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault. Have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Battery charge</b>	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...). The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Maximum coolant temperature</b>	fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping-up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.
	<b>Engine oil pressure</b>	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system. You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	<b>Water in Diesel*</b>	fixed.	The Diesel fuel filter contains water. Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

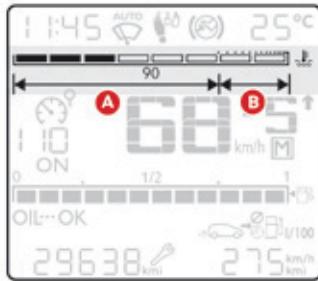
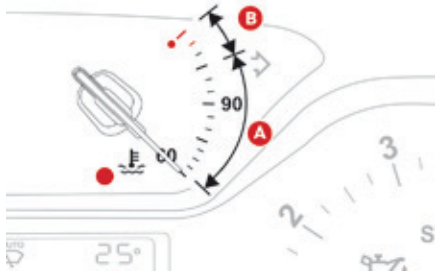
\* Only on the Symbols LCD instrument panel.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<b>Under-inflation</b>	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.  Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after the adjustment of one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information on <b>Under-inflation detection</b> , refer to the corresponding section.
		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The system has a fault: the tyre pressures are no longer monitored.
	<b>Foot on the brake</b>	fixed.	The brake pedal is not pressed sufficiently.  With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, press the brake pedal before releasing the parking brake, to unlock the lever and come out of position <b>P</b> . If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.



# Indicators

## Coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; this warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

**!** After first switching off the ignition, open the bonnet cautiously and check the coolant level.

**i** For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Service indicator



System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the next service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset, depending on the distance travelled and the time elapsed since the last service.

**i** For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the degree of deterioration of the engine oil is also taken into account (depending on the country of sale).

### More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

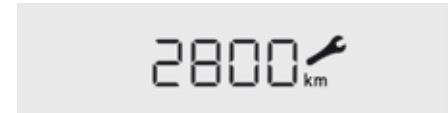
When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

### Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

**Example:** 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:




5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total distance.



### Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

**Example:** 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



900 km

5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



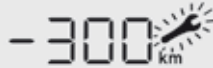
19 100 km

### Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

**Example:** the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



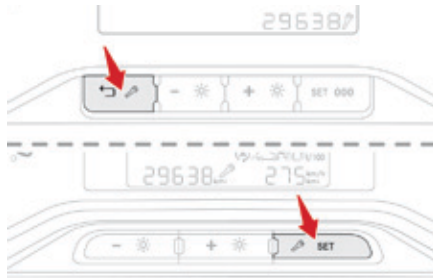
-300 km

5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on.**

**i** For BlueHDi Diesel versions, this alert may also be accompanied by the fixed illumination of the service warning lamp when the ignition is on.

**i** The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driving conditions. Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the period since the last service, indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.

**i** For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the spanner may also be brought on earlier than expected, depending on the degree of deterioration of the engine oil (depending on the country of sale). The rate of deterioration of the engine oil depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.



## Resetting the service indicator

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself, switch off the ignition:

- ☞ Press and hold this button,
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ When the display indicates "**=0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

**i** If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

## Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

## Engine oil level indicator\*

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

**i** The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

OIL OK

### Oil level correct

OIL

### Oil level incorrect

This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal. If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

**i** For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

OIL\_\_

### Oil level indicator fault

This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.

If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.


\* Depending on version.

## AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.


Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

### In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

 The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

#### Remaining range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)

When switching on the ignition, there is no automatic display of range in the instrument panel.

 **SET** Pressing this button will temporarily display the remaining range with the message "AdBlue: range greater than 1 500 miles" and, depending on the level in the AdBlue tank, followed by a message indicating that you can top up with at least 10 litres.

**SET 000**

Remaining range between 350 and 1 500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, the AdBlue warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented (e.g. "NO START IN 900 miles" means that starting will be prevented in 900 miles).

When driving, the message is displayed every 190 miles (300 km) until the AdBlue tank has been topped up.

The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that the tank be topped up as soon as possible.

It is recommended that no more than 10 litres of AdBlue® are added.

For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



**SERVICE**

When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented (e.g. "NO START IN 180 miles" means that starting will be prevented in 180 miles).

When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue tank has been topped up.

It is essential to top up the tank as soon as possible before it is completely empty; otherwise, the engine may no longer start.

For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

**Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®**



**SERVICE**

When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and 0 km or miles ("NO START IN 0 miles" means that starting is prevented).

The AdBlue tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.



To be able to start the engine, it is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

## In the event of detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

**!** A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### In the event of detection of a fault



The AdBlue, SERVICE and engine self-diagnostics warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault". The alert is triggered when driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

**i** If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after a self-diagnostics test of the SCR emissions control system.

### During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine self-diagnostics warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented (e.g. "NO START IN 350 miles" means that starting will be prevented in 350 miles).

While driving, this display appears every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

### Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine self-diagnostics warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or kilometres ("NO START IN 0 miles" means that starting is prevented).

**!** You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## Distance recorders

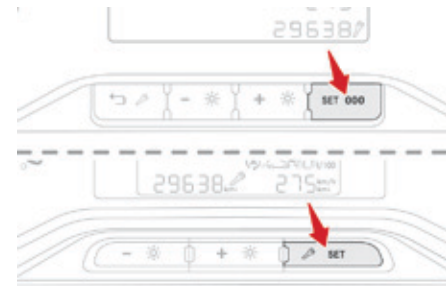
The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

**i** When travelling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.



### Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



### Trip distance recorder

It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

#### Resetting the trip recorder



- ☞ With the ignition on, press the button until dashes appear.



# Configuration of the equipment on vehicles without a screen

If your vehicle is not fitted with an audio system or a touch screen, you can still configure certain equipment using the **Text LCD instrument panel**.

## Control buttons

**SET 000** A brief press on this button gives access to the configuration menu, a brief press confirms.

-  A press on one of these buttons scrolls through a menu, a list;  
+  changes a value.

  A press on this button goes back a level or abandons the operation in progress.

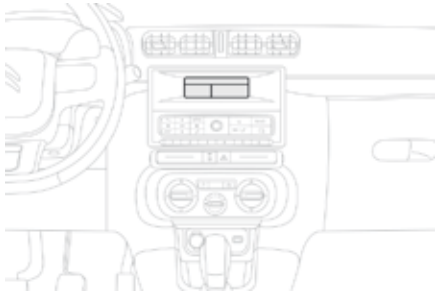
## Display menus

- LIGHTING:
  - DAYTIME LAMPS (Daytime running lamps),
  - GUIDE LAMPS (Guide-me-home lighting),
  - WELCOME LAMPS (Welcome lighting).
- DRIVE ASSIST:
  - CHK PRESSURES|REINITIALISE (Reinitialisation of the tyre under-inflation detection system),
  - VIGILANCE ALT (Fatigue detection),
  - ADVISED SPEED (Speed limit recognition),
  - PARKING (Parking sensors).

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

# Monochrome screen C

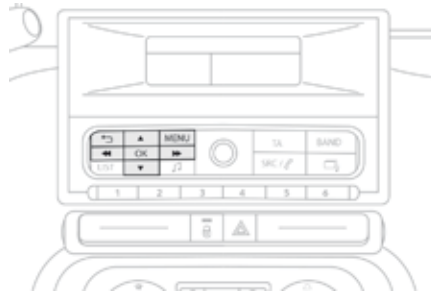
## Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- exterior temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- graphic parking sensor information,
- current audio source,
- telephone or hands-free kit system information,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

## Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, press:

- ☞ the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ the **"▲"** or **"▼"** buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- ☞ the **"◀"** or **"▶"** buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ the **"OK"** button to confirm,
- or
- ☞ the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

## Main menu



- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - "Multimedia",
  - "Telephone",
  - "Trip computer",
  - "Connections",
  - "Personalisation-configuration",
- ☞ Press the **"◀"** or **"▶"** buttons to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.



## "Multimedia" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat). For more information on the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" supplement.



## "Trip computer" menu

This menu allows you to view information on the status of the vehicle.

### Warning log

This summarises the warning messages for systems, displaying them on the screen.



## "Connections" menu

With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be paired and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files). For more information on the "Connections" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" supplement.



## "Telephone" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories. For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" supplement.



## "Personalisation-configuration" menu

This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Display configuration".

### Define the vehicle parameters

This menu permits activation / deactivation of the following equipment, depending on version and/or the country of sale:

- **"Vehicle lighting"**:
  - "Daytime lights".
- **"Interior lighting"**:
  - "Guide-me-home headlamps",
  - "Welcome lighting".
- **"Comfort"**:
  - Tyre inflation,
  - Fatigue Detection System,
  - Parking assistance.
- **"Driving assistance"**:
  - "Speed recommendation",
  - "Blind spot monitoring".

For more information on this equipment, refer to the corresponding sections.

### Display configuration

Once this menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display from a pre-defined list.

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display personalisation",
- "Choice of language".



As a safety measure, the driver must only perform operations requiring sustained attention when stationary.

## Touch screen

The touch screen gives access to:

- the heating/air conditioning controls,
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,

and, depending on equipment, allows:

- the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
- the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice),
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

**!** For safety reasons, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

## General operation

### Recommendations

Use is possible in all temperatures.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

### Principles

Use the buttons on either side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Certain functions may be displayed over 1 or 2 pages.

To deactivate/activate a function, press OFF/ON.

To modify a setting (lighting duration, etc.) or access additional information, press the symbol for the function.

**i** After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.

✓ Use this button to confirm.

← Use this button to return to the previous page.

## Menus



### Radio Media.

See "Audio and telematics" supplement.



### Connected navigation or Mirror Screen\*.

See "Audio and telematics" supplement.



### Air conditioning.

Allows control of the settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Heating**, **Manual air conditioning** and **Automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.



### Telephone.

See "Audio and telematics" supplement.



### Applications.

Allows the display of the connected services available.  
See "Audio and telematics" supplement.



### Driving.

Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".



### Volume / mute.

See "Audio and telematics" supplement.

## Upper bar

Certain information is always present in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Recall of the air conditioning information, and access to a simplified menu (temperature and air flow adjustment only).
- Recall of information from the **Radio Media** and **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions\*.
- Notifications zone (texts and email)\*.



- Access to **Configuration**.

\* Depending on equipment.

## Driving menu

### Vehicle settings tab

The functions are grouped into 3 families:

Families	Functions
<b>Comfort</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper linked to reverse gear.</li></ul>
<b>Lamps</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.</li><li>- "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of the exterior welcome lighting.</li><li>- "Daytime running lamps" (LED): depending on the country of sale.</li></ul>
<b>Security</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.</li><li>- "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of the speed limit recognition system.</li></ul>

**i** For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.



## Driving functions tab





Corresponding function	Comments
Stop & Start	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Parking sensors	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Traction control	Activation/deactivation of the function
Blind spot sensors	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Under-inflation initialisation	Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.
Adjusting Speeds	Memorisation of speed settings for the speed limiter or the cruise control.
Diagnostic	List of current alerts.





**i** For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.



## Configuration

The functions available through this menu are detailed in the table below. Certain adjustments are accessible in the secondary page.

Button	Comments
	Turn off the screen.
	Adjustment of brightness.
	Choice and settings for three profiles.
	Settings for the touch screen.
	Activation and adjustment of Wi-Fi settings.

Button	Comments
	Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice of units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit)</li><li>- distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).</li></ul>
	Choice of language used for the touch screen.
	Setting the date and time.

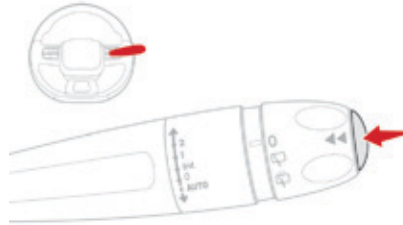
# Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption...).

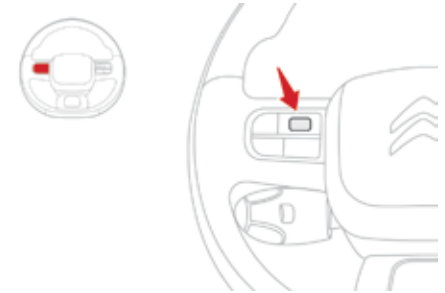
## Display of information

These are displayed in turn:

- Trip distance.
- Range.
- Current consumption.
- Average speed.
- Stop & Start time counter.
- Speed limit recognition information.



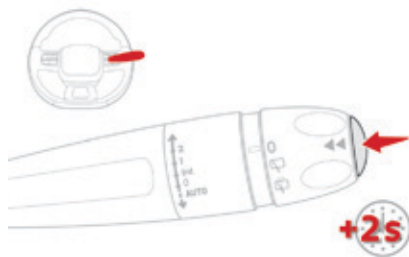
☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.



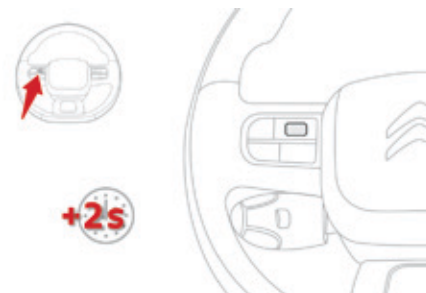
☞ Press the thumbwheel on the **steering wheel**.

## Trip reset

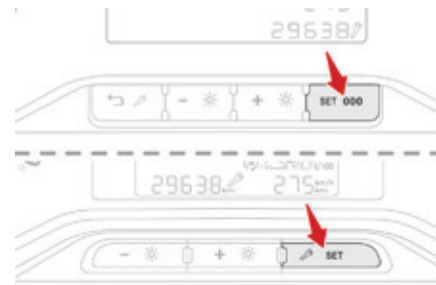
The reset is carried out when the trip is displayed.



- ☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.



- ☞ Press the thumbwheel on the steering wheel for more than two seconds.



- ☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

## A few definitions...



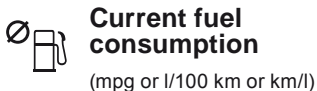
The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

**i** This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

**!** If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

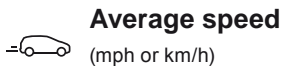


Calculated over the last few seconds.

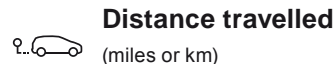
**i** This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



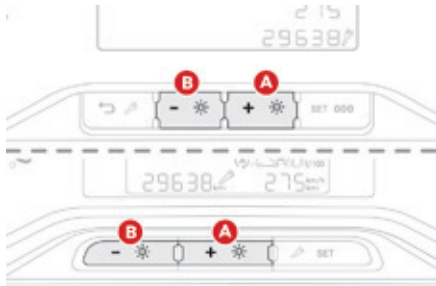
**Stop & Start time counter**  
(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

## Lighting dimmer control

Allows the manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and touch screen to suit the ambient light level.

Operates only when the vehicle lighting is on, with the exception of the daytime running lamps.



### Two buttons

With the exterior lighting on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the interior mood lighting or button **B** to reduce it.

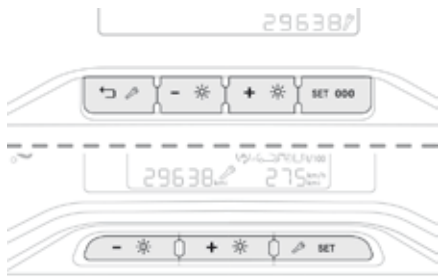
As soon as the lighting reaches the required level of brightness, release the button.

### Touch screen

- ☞ In the **Configuration** menu, select "**Brightness**".
- ☞ Adjust the brightness using the arrows or by moving the cursor.

# Setting the date and time

## Without audio system



You can set the date and time from the instrument panel display.

SET 000



Press and hold this button.



Press one of these buttons to select the setting to change.

SET 000



Press this button briefly to confirm.



Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to save the change.

## With audio system



- ☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, then the "OK" button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Display configuration" menu, then the "OK" button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" line, then the "OK" button.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the setting to change. Confirm by pressing the "OK" button.
- ☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming by pressing the "OK" button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the "OK" button to select the "OK" box and confirm or press the "Back" button to cancel.

## With CITROËN Connect Radio



☞ Select the **Settings** menu.

☞ Select "**System configuration**".



☞ Select "**Date and time**".

☞ Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".

☞ Choose the display formats.

☞ Change the date and/or the time using the numeric keypad.



☞ Press this button to confirm.



## With CITROËN Connect Nav

The date and time settings are only available if the synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.



☞ Select the **Settings** menu.

☞ Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



☞ Select "**Setting the time-date**".

☞ Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.

☞ Set the time or the date using the numeric keypad.



☞ Press this button to confirm.

### Additional settings

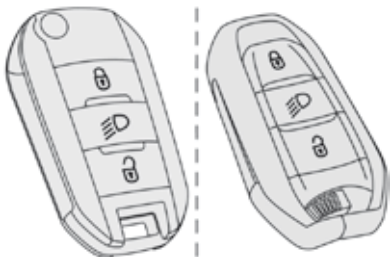
You can choose to:

- change the date and time display format (12hr / 24hr),
- change the time zone,
- activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

# Remote control

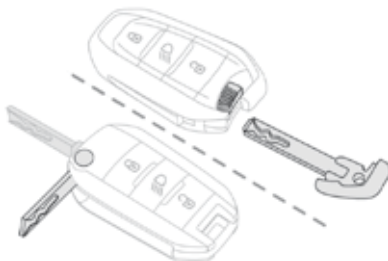
## General points



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking / locking / deadlocking of the vehicle,
- opening of the fuel tank cap,
- remote switching on of the lighting,
- activation / deactivation of the alarm,
- locating the vehicle,
- vehicle immobiliser.

In normal operating conditions, it is preferable to use the remote control.



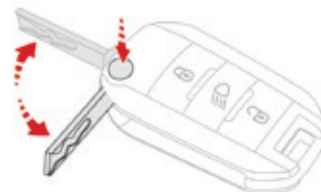
The key, integral with the remote control, can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking / locking / deadlocking of the vehicle,
- turning the child lock on or off,
- activation / deactivation of the passenger's front airbag,
- back-up door locking,
- switching on the ignition and starting / stopping the engine.

Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked or unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery...

For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

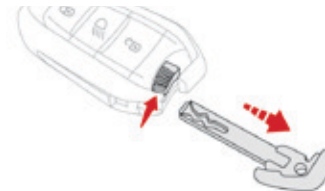
## Ejecting the key



### Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

- ☞ Press this button; the key is ejected from its housing.

To avoid damaging the mechanism, first press this button to fold it.



### Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

- ☞ Pull on this button to remove the key from the housing.

To return it to the housing, first pull on this button.

## Unlocking the vehicle



- ☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

When the unlocking button is pressed, the flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- unlocking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
- deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

## Locking the vehicle

### Normal locking



- ☞ Press this button.

When the locking button is pressed, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- locking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
- activation of the alarm for other versions.

**i** If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the locking does not take place. However, if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be fully activated after about 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm had been previously activated, it will be reactivated automatically.

### Deadlocking



- ☞ Make a first press on this button.
- ☞ Within five seconds, press this button again to deadlock the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by illumination of the direction indicators for few seconds on the second press of the locking button.

**!** Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

## Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, especially when the light is poor.

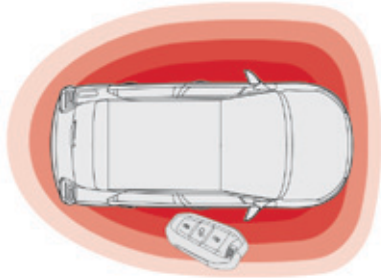


☞ Press this button.

The sidelamps and the dipped headlamps come on for 30 seconds.  
Pressing the button again before the end of this period switches the lamps off immediately.

# Keyless Entry and Starting

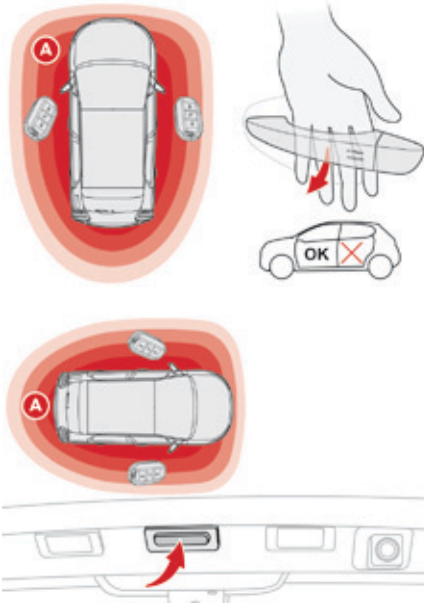
2



System that allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the electronic key on your person.

**i** The electronic key can also be used as a remote control. For more information on the **Remote Control**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Unlocking the vehicle



**g** With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control.

**i** The flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- unlocking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
- deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

**i** If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

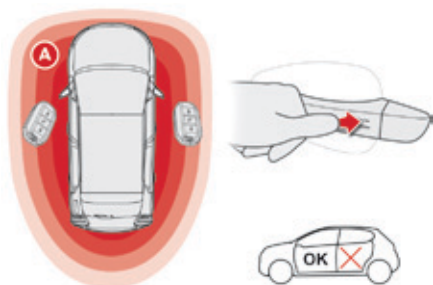
If the vehicle is unlocked by mistake and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock again automatically after about 30 seconds.

If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

**!** As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period. Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

**!** In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader. For more information on **Starting with Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Locking the vehicle

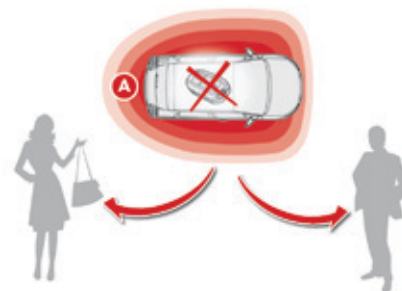


### Normal locking

☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the keys is left inside the vehicle.

- i** The lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
- locking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
  - activation of the alarm for other versions.

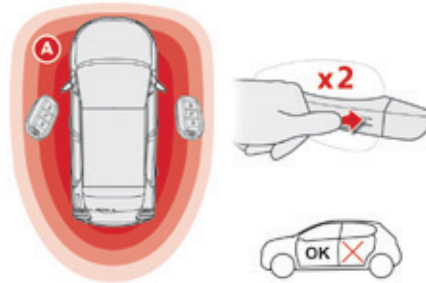


**!** For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

**!** Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt...) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, ...) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

## Deadlocking

**!** Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



- ☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.
- ☞ Within five seconds, press the front door handle again to deadlock the vehicle.



## **!** Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

### **Remote control**

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

### **Locking the vehicle**

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

### **Electrical interference**

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, ...

### **Anti-theft protection**

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

### **When purchasing a second-hand vehicle**

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.  
Take them to an approved collection point.

# Back-up procedures

## Total unlocking / locking of the vehicle with the key

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- remote control battery flat,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

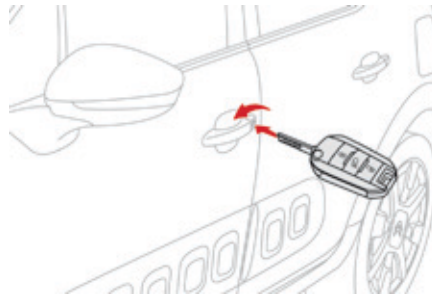
In the first case, you can also replace the remote control battery.

Refer to the corresponding section.

In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding section.

### Unlocking

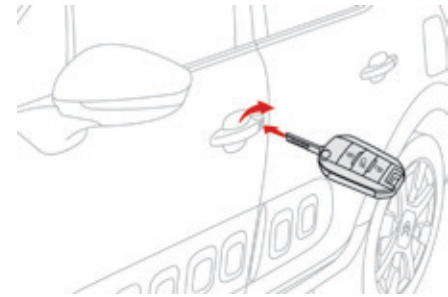


- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, the unlocking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

**i** If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

### Normal locking

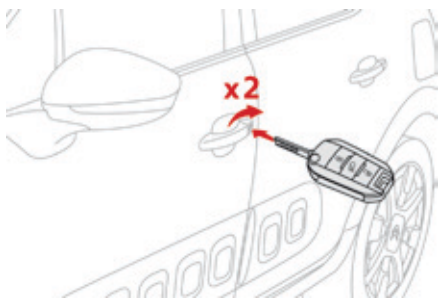


- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, the locking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

**i** If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.

## Deadlocking



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it.
- ☞ Within five seconds, turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle again to deadlock it.

For versions without alarm, at the second manoeuvre the deadlocking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

## Without central locking

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

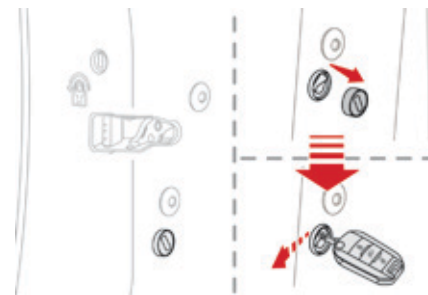
### Driver's door

- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

### Passenger doors

#### Unlocking a door

- ☞ Pull the interior opening control for the door.



### Locking

- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

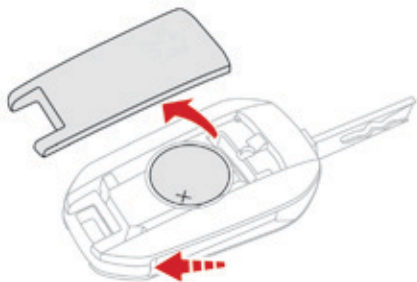
- ☞ Remove the black cap on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Without forcing, insert the key into the aperture; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

## Changing the battery

A message appears in the instrument panel screen when replacement of the battery is needed.

### Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

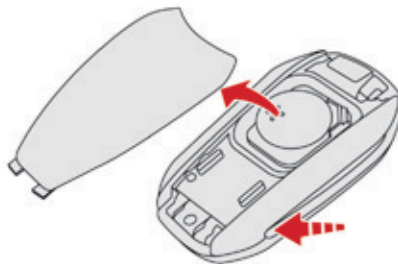
**Battery type: CR1620 / 3 volts.**



- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.

### Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

**Battery type: CR2032 / 3 volts.**



- ☞ Fit the new battery into its housing observing the polarity.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

The remote control must be reinitialised after replacing the battery.

For more information on reinitialising the remote control, refer to the corresponding section.

## Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

### Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

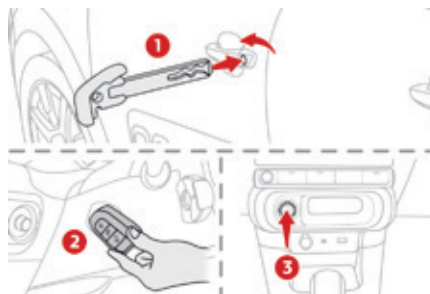


- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (ignition on)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

### Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

- ☞ Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.



- ☞ If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
  - ☞ If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, select position **P** then press the brake pedal firmly.
  - ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.
- The electronic key is now fully operational again.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

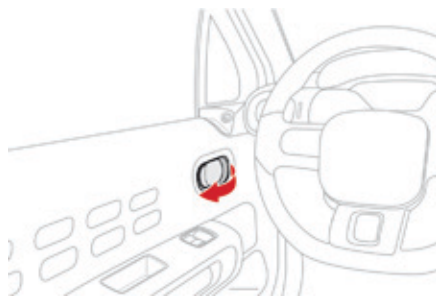
## Doors

### Opening



#### From outside

- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.



#### From inside

- ☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

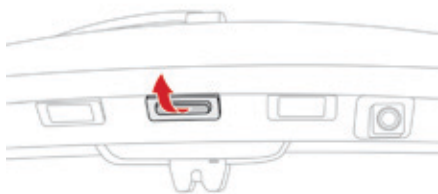
## Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:



- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an audible signal for a few seconds.

## Boot Opening



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked or with the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key in the recognition zone, press the tailgate central control.
- ☞ Raise the tailgate.

## Closing

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

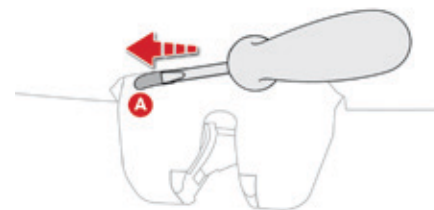
If the tailgate is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message for a few seconds.

## Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.



## Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

## Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

# Central locking

This function allows the doors and boot to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.

## Manual mode



### Locking

- ☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

**i** If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

### Unlocking

- ☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

### **i** When locking / deadlocking from the outside

- When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.
- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door levers to unlock the vehicle.
  - ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

## Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security. For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.



## Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.



This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

### ! Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

### Activation / Deactivation



You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

- ☞ With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

**i** Driving with the doors locked may render access for the emergency services difficult in an emergency.

# Alarm\*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following type of monitoring:

## - exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet, etc.

## Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

**!** For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Locking the vehicle with alarm system

### Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle with the remote control or with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the locking button on the dashboard flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

**i** Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds.  
If an opening (door, boot, etc.) is not fully closed, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the locking button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

**i** If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated automatically.

\* Depending on the country of sale.

## Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the locking button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops.

## Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

## Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, and for 10 seconds, the flashing of the indicator lamp in the locking button indicates a fault with the system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Electric windows



1. **Left-hand front electric window.**
2. **Right-hand front electric window.**
3. **Right-hand rear electric window.**
4. **Left-hand rear electric window.**
5. **Deactivating the rear electric window switches.**

### Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

### Automatic one-touch operation (depending on version)

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

**i** The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

### Safety anti-pinch (depending on version)

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again. In the event of unwanted opening of the window when closing automatically, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

## Deactivating the rear window controls



For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the windows of the rear doors, irrespective of their position.

With the warning lamp on, the rear switches are deactivated. With the warning lamp off, the switches are active.

## Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch is not active during these operations:

- lower the window completely, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the switch is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window closes completely,
- press and hold the switch upwards for at least one second after reaching this position, window closed.

**!** Always remove the key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time. In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned. When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows. The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly. Be aware of children when operating the windows.

## Front seats

**!** As a safety measure, adjustments to the driver's seat must only be done when stationary.

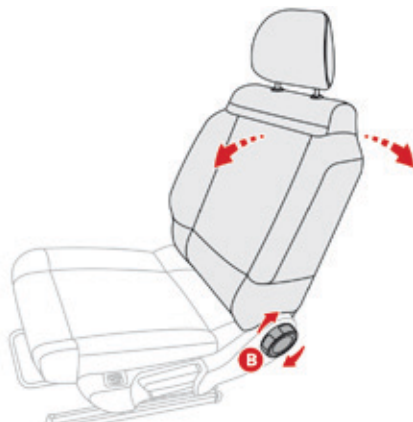
### Adjustments

#### Forwards-backwards



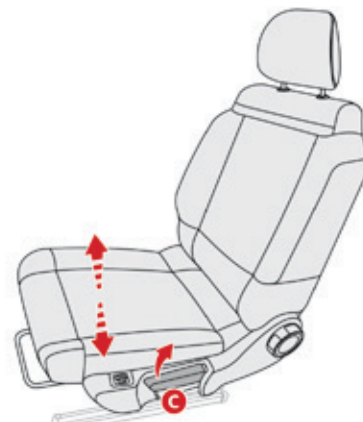
☞ Raise the control **A** and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

#### Seat backrest angle



☞ Turn the knob **B** to adjust the backrest.

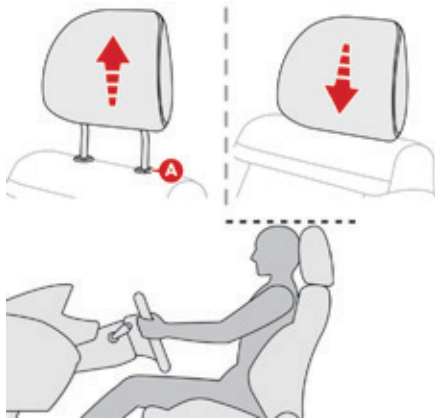
#### Height (driver only)



☞ Pull the control **C** upwards to raise the seat or push it downwards to lower it, as many times as required, to obtain the desired position.

**!** Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

## Front head restraints



### Adjusting the height

#### Upward:

- ☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

#### Downward:

- ☞ press the lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

**!** The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.

### Removing a head restraint

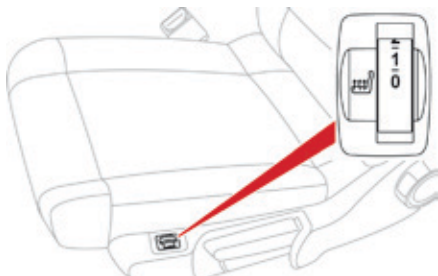
- ☞ Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and then pull it fully out.
- ☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

### Refitting a head restraint

- ☞ Introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
- ☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.
- ☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

**!** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

## Heated seats



☞ With the engine running, use the control wheel to switch on and select the level of heating required:

- 0:** Off.
- 1:** Low.
- 2:** Medium.
- 3:** High.

The front seats can be heated individually.



Do not use the function if the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the level of heating as soon as possible.

Once the seat and passenger compartment are at a comfortable temperature, you can switch off the function; reducing electric current consumption also reduces fuel consumption.



Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for those that do not have normal perception of heat (illness, taking medicines, ...). There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

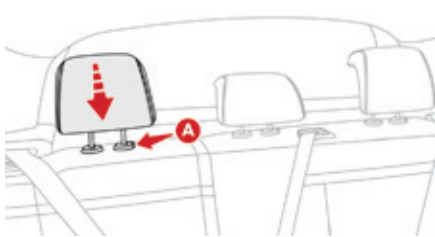
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.



# Rear seats

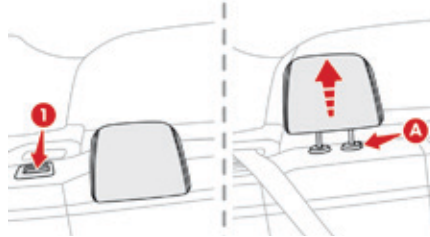
Bench seat with fixed cushions and split folding backrests (2/3-1/3) to adapt the boot load space.

## Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- a **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  - ☞ pull the head restraint fully up.
- a **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  - ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.



The rear head restraints can be removed.

### To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ release the backrest using the control **1**,
- ☞ tilt the backrest slightly forwards,
- ☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely,
- ☞ stow the head restraint.

### To refit a head restraint:

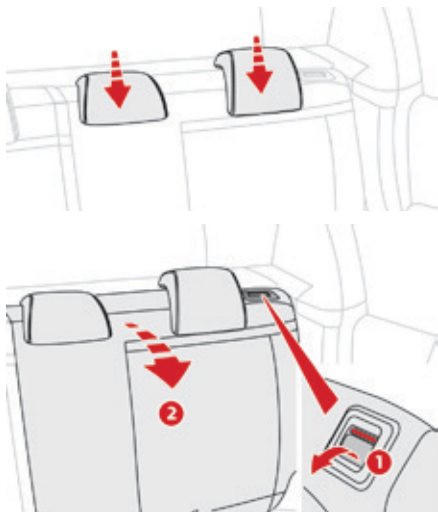
- ☞ introduce the rods of the head restraint into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest,
- ☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it fully down.



Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position. The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

# 3

## Folding the backrests



First:

- ☞ lower the head restraints,
  - ☞ if necessary, move the front seats forward,
  - ☞ check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
  - ☞ check that the outer seat belts are lying correctly on the backrests.
- 
- ☞ Press the backrest release grip 1.
  - ☞ Guide the backrest 2 down to the horizontal position.

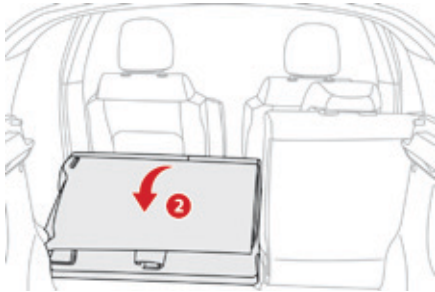
**i** When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grip.

**!** Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

## Returning the backrests to their original position

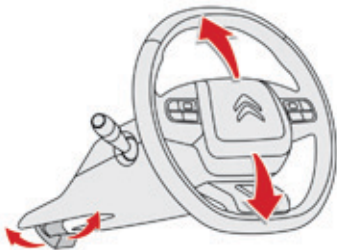
**!** First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically alongside the backrest latching rings.

**!** Caution, a backrest that has not latched correctly compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident. The contents of the boot may be thrown forward - Risk of serious injury!



- ☞ Put the backrest **2** in the upright position and push on it to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in the release grip **1**.
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

## Steering wheel adjustment



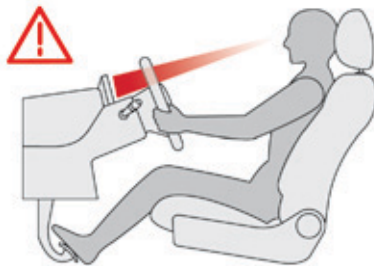
- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

**!** As a safety measure, these adjustments should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

## Correct driving position

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomics of your driving position, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- height of the head restraint,
- backrest angle,
- cushion height,
- longitudinal position of the seat,
- height of the steering wheel,
- the interior and door mirrors.



**!** Once these adjustments have been made, ensure that from your driving position you can see the instrument panel clearly.

# Ventilation

## Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

## Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

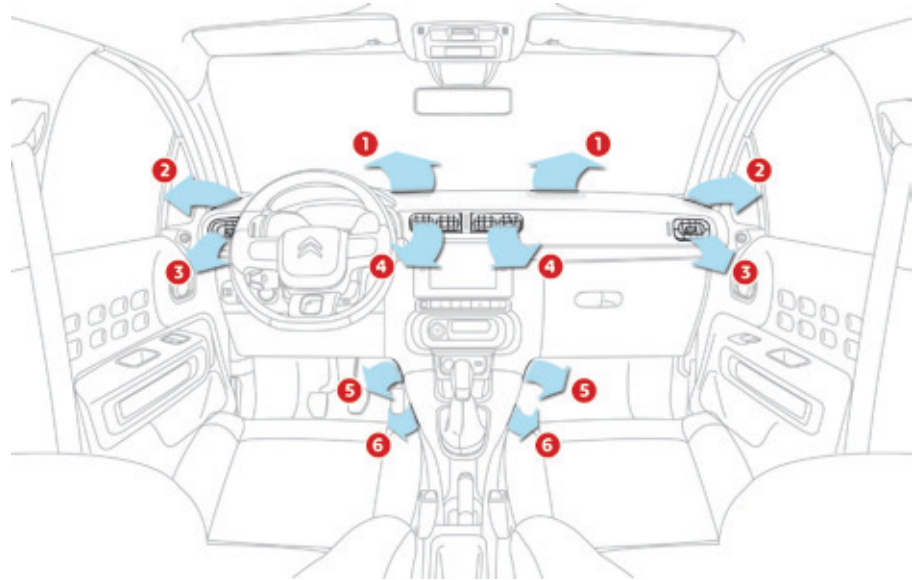
- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

## Control panel



Depending on equipment, the controls of this system are accessible in the **Air conditioning** menu of the touch screen or on the centre console panel located below the audio system.

The demisting/defrosting controls for the windscreen and rear screen are located below the touch screen or on the centre console panel located below the audio system.



## Air distribution


1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Adjustable side air vent.
4. Adjustable central air vents.
5. Air outlets for the front footwells.
6. Rear air outlets.

## Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

- i** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:
  - ☞ To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
  - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
  - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
  - ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
  - ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
  - ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

-  If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

- i** The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

### **i** Stop & Start

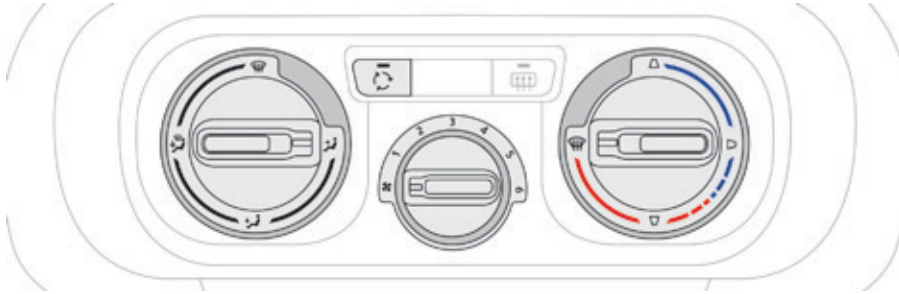
The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.

To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

# Heating

The heating system only operates with the engine running.



## Temperature adjustment





- ☞ Turn the control from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your wishes.

## Air flow adjustment

- ☞ Turn the knob from position 1 to 6 to obtain the desired flow of air.

**i** Avoid driving for too long without ventilation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

## Air distribution adjustment

-  Central and side air vents.
-  Footwells.
-  Windscreen and footwells.
-  Windscreen.

The air distribution can be varied by placing the control in an intermediate position.

## Air intake / Air recirculation

# 3

Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

This function can also be used to speed up the heating or cooling of the passenger compartment.



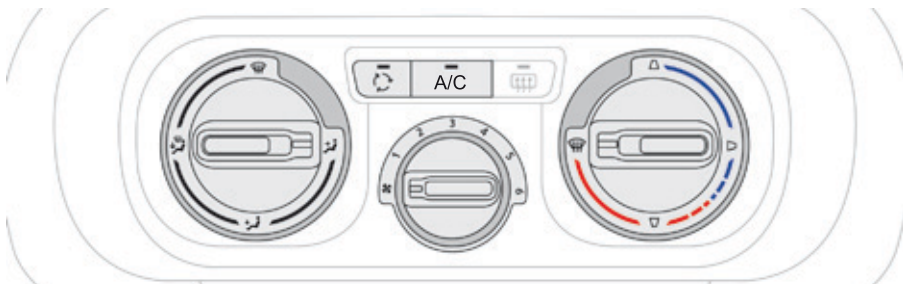
- ☞ Press this button to select the passenger compartment air intake mode

When the indicator lamp is off, the exterior air intake function is activated.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air recirculation function is activated, the intake of exterior air is inhibited.

# Manual air conditioning

The manual air conditioning system operates with the engine running.



## Temperature adjustment





- ☞ Turn the control from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your liking.

## Air flow adjustment

- ☞ From position 1 to position 6, turn the thumbwheel to obtain a sufficient air flow for your comfort.

**i** Avoid driving for too long without ventilation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

## Air distribution adjustment

-  Central and side vents.
-  Footwells.
-  Windscreen and footwells.
-  Windscreen.

**i** The distribution of the air can be adjusted by placing the control in an intermediate position.

## Air intake / Air recirculation

Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

This function can also be used to speed up the heating or cooling of the passenger compartment.



- ☞ Press this button to choose the passenger compartment air intake mode.

When the indicator lamp is off, the exterior air intake function is activated.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air recirculation function is activated, the intake of exterior air is inhibited.




## Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:


- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

### Switching on

A/C  Press this button to switch on the air conditioning.

**i** The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

### Switching off

A/C  Press this button again to switch off the air conditioning.

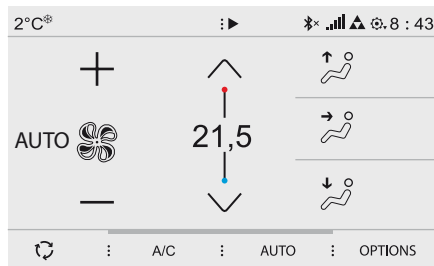
## Automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on.

Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.



- Select the **Air conditioning** menu in the touch screen to display the controls page for the system.



### Temperature adjustment



- Press this button to increase the value.



- Press this button to decrease the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.


### Automatic comfort programme

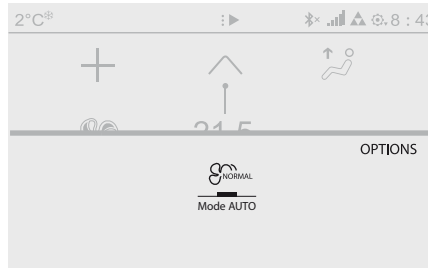
#### Activation / Deactivation

- AUTO** Press the **AUTO** button to activate or deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

The air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

## Automatic programme mode setting

**OPTIONS**  Go to the secondary page by pressing this button to vary the automatic comfort programme, choosing one of the modes offered.



To change the current setting, press the button several times in succession to access the desired mode:

**"Soft"**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

**"Normal"**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

**"Fast"**: provides strong and effective air flow.

This setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, on deactivation of AUTO mode, the last setting used remains on. Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if deactivated.

**i** In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

## Resuming manual control

You can manually adjust the air flow and distribution.

As soon as you modify a setting, the automatic comfort programme is deactivated.

- ☞ Press the **AUTO** button to activate the automatic comfort programme again.

AUTO

## Air flow adjustment



Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the air flow.



The symbol for air flow (a fan) fills progressively according to the air flow setting made.

By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

"OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.



Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

## Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the distribution of air in the passenger compartment using these three buttons.



Windscreen.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function.



The three buttons can be activated simultaneously. In this case, the flows of air from the central and side vents and the footwell vents are favoured.


## Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate efficiently in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:


- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- in winter, above 3 °C, to improve demisting.

### Switching on

**A/C**  Press this button to switch on the air conditioning.

**i** The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow is set to off.

### Switching off

**A/C**  Press this button again to switch off the air conditioning.



## Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air avoids and eliminates misting of the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air prevents exterior odours and smoke from entering the passenger compartment.

**i** This function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.



-  Press this button to recirculate the interior air.
-  Press this button again to allow the intake of exterior air.

**!** Avoid the prolonged use of interior air recirculation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

## Ventilation with "ignition on" function

With the ignition on, you can use the ventilation system and access the **Air conditioning** menu to adjust the **air flow** and **air distribution** in the passenger compartment.

This function is available for a few minutes, depending on the state of charge of the battery of your vehicle.

This function does not activate the air conditioning.

You can make use of the residual heat in the engine to warm the passenger compartment using the temperature setting buttons.

## Front demist - defrost



These markings on the control panels indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

During the winter period, direct the side air vents towards the side glasses to optimise their demisting and defrosting.

### With control panel on the centre console

#### On

- ☞ Put the temperature and air flow controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air distribution control to the "Windscreen" position.

#### Off

- ☞ Put the air flow control to the **fan** position.

### With touch screen

#### On



- ☞ Press this button.  
The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The system automatically controls the air conditioning, the air flow and the air intake and provides optimum distribution of the ventilation to the windscreen and side windows.

#### Off

- ☞ Press this button again to switch it off.  
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

**i** With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

# Rear screen demist - defrost

## Switching on



- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.



Switch off the heating of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as you judge it possible, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

## Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

- ☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing this button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.



The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

## Courtesy lamp



1. Courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamps

### Courtesy lamp



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is pressed, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.



With the "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

### Map reading lamps

With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.



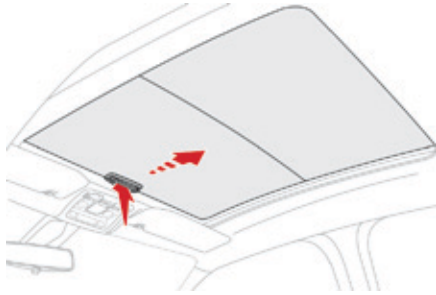
Take care to avoid leaving anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.



## Panoramic sunroof

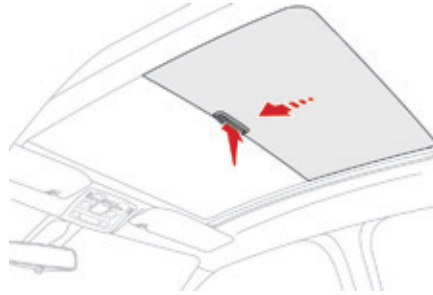
This has a manual blind in two sections which helps to maintain a comfortable temperature and reduce the noise in the passenger compartment.

### Opening



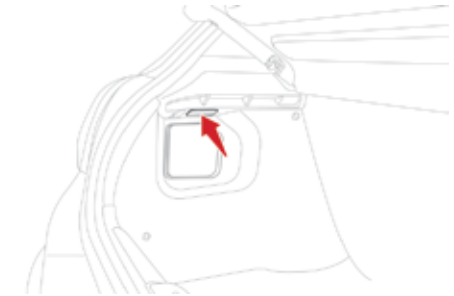
☞ Pull the blind rearwards until it locks in.

### Closing



☞ Pull the blind forwards until it locks in.

## Boot lamp



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

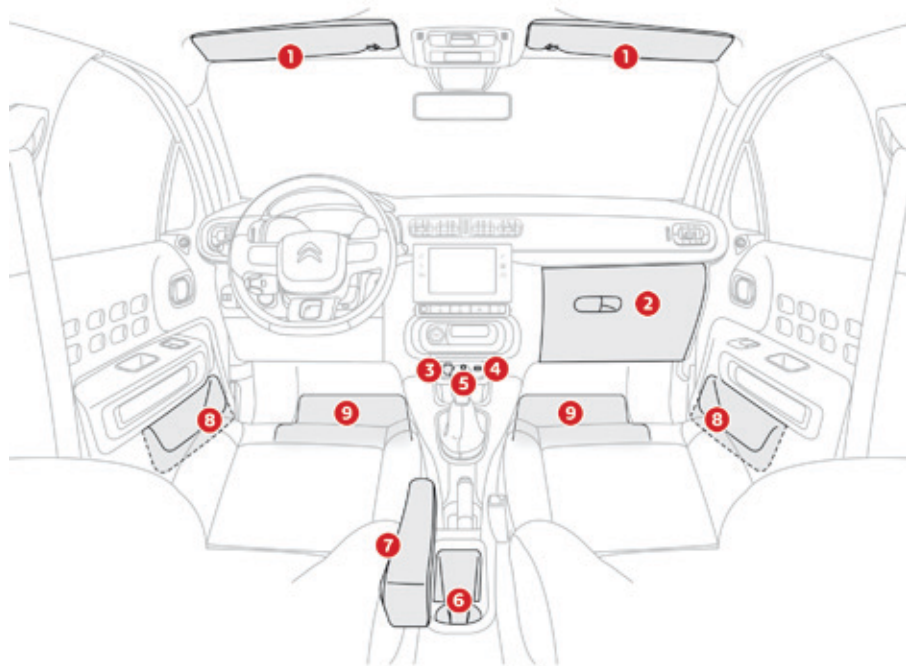
Different lighting times are provided:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

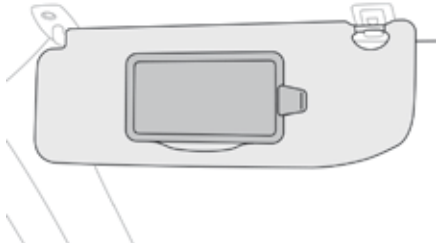
# 3

## Interior fittings

1. Sun visor.
2. Glove box.
3. 12 V accessory socket (max. 120 W).
4. USB port.
5. Auxiliary socket.
6. Open storage with double cup holder.
7. Front armrest  
(depending on version)
8. Storage trays.
9. Mat.  
(depending on version)



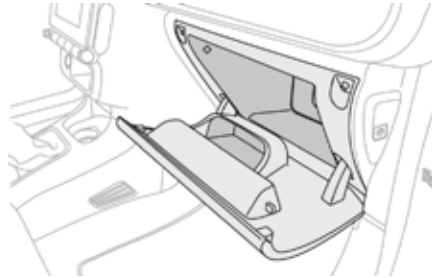
## Sun visor



The driver's sun visor is fitted with a vanity mirror, with concealing flap and a document (or ticket) holder.

**!** Do not attach or stick anything to the passenger's sun visor; this could cause injuries if the front airbag (fitted in the roof) is deployed.

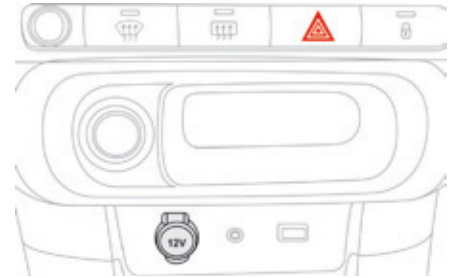
## Glove box



It can be used to hold a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc. Depending on version, it may have a lid. In this case:

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

## 12 V socket

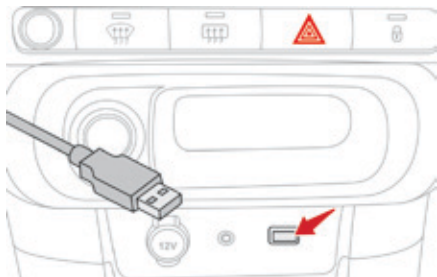


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

**!** Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (otherwise there is a risk of damaging your portable device).

**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

## USB port



It allows the connection of a portable device or a USB memory stick.

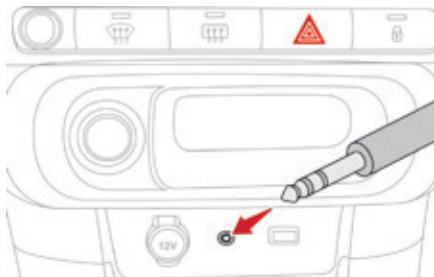
It reads the audio files which are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering mounted or audio system controls.

**i** When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically. A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.

For more information on using this equipment, refer to the "Audio and telematics" supplement.

## Auxiliary socket



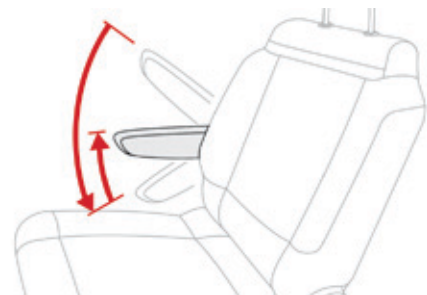
It permits the connection of a portable device so that you can listen to your music files via the vehicle's speakers.

The management of the files is done using your portable device.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "**Audio and telematics**" supplement.

## Front armrest

Comfort system for the driver and front passenger.



## Height adjustment

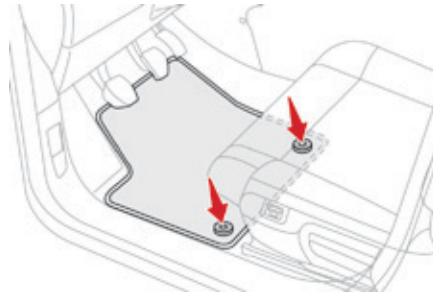
- ☞ Fully lower the armrest.
- ☞ Raise it to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ Once in the high position, lift to release it and return it to the low position.

## Coat hooks



They are located above each rear door.

## Mats



### Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided. The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

### Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

### Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

# 3

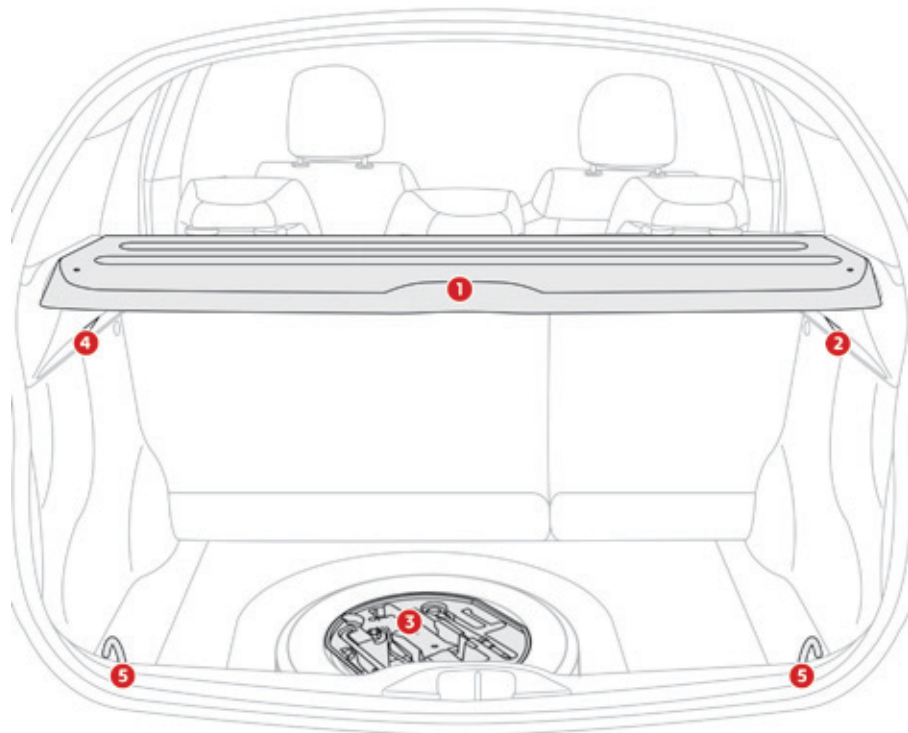
**!** To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

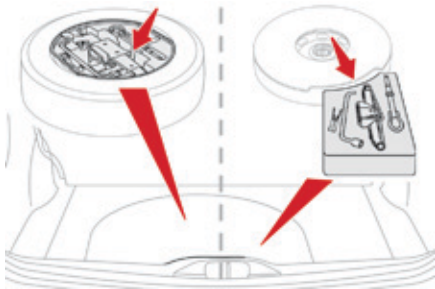
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter. The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

## Boot fittings

1. Rear parcel shelf.
2. Hooks.
3. Storage box.
4. Lighting.
5. Stowing rings.



## Storage box



- ☞ Remove the boot carpet for access to the storage box.

Depending on the configuration, it is laid out for storing:

- a towing eye,
- a temporary puncture repair kit,
- a warning triangle,
- ...

**!** For versions with storage box: it must be in place before loading the boot.

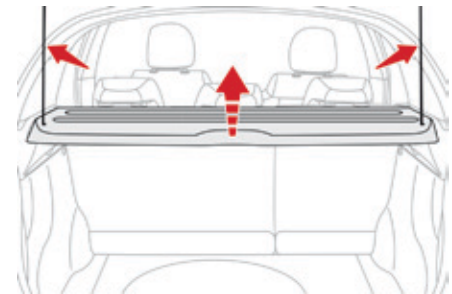
## Hooks



The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.

**!** Take care to secure only light bags.

## Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:

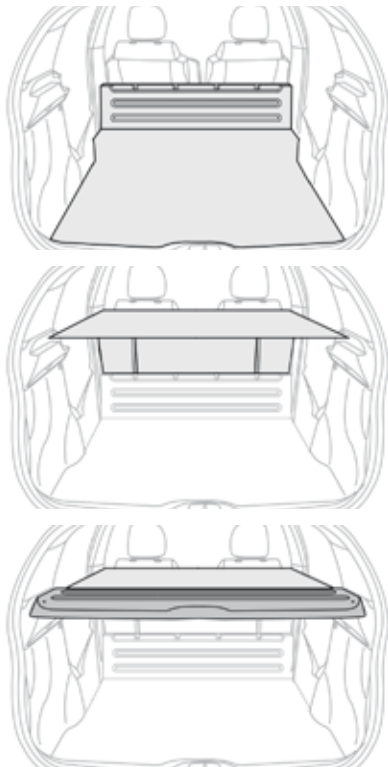
- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

There are several options for storing the shelf:

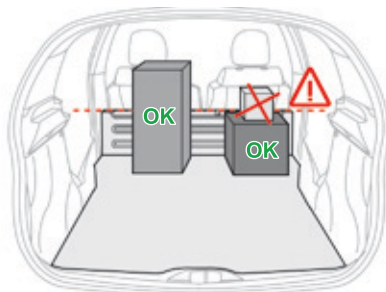
- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

3

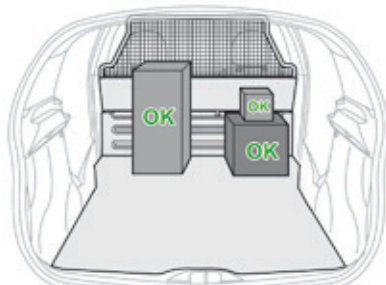
## Rear parcel shelf (enterprise version)



This conceals the interior of the vehicle in combination with the existing shelf.



**!** Do not place objects above the load stop.



If your vehicle is fitted with a protective grille, you can place objects above the load stop.



**!** Do not place hard or heavy objects on the rear parcel shelf. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

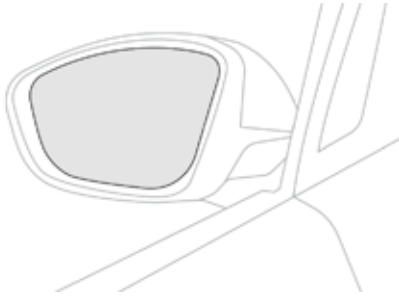
To access the spare wheel on the enterprise versions:

- Remove the tray.
- Raise the hinged floor.
- Remove the shim.

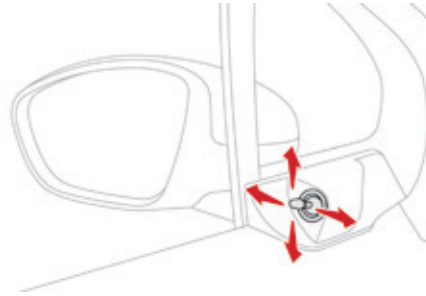


# Mirrors

## Door mirrors

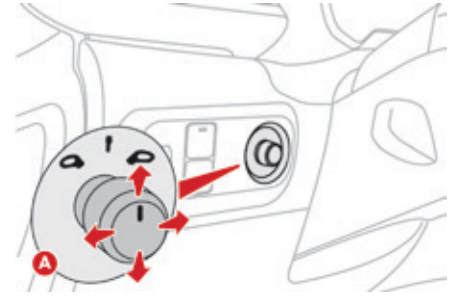


Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.



### Manual adjustment

- ☞ Operate the lever in the four directions to adjust the angle of the mirror glass.



### Electric adjustment

- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control to the central position.

## Demisting - Defrosting



Demisting-defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on demisting and defrosting the rear screen, refer to the corresponding section.



As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

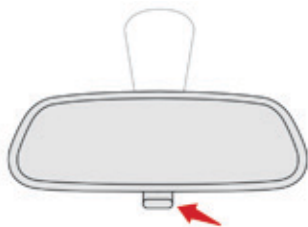
### Manual folding

You can fold the mirrors manually (tight parking space, narrow garage..).

- ☞ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

## Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...



### Manual model

#### Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

#### Day / night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

### Automatic "electrochrome" model

This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.

**i** In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

# Lighting control

## Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

## Additional lighting

Other lamps are provided (depending on version) to meet the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp,
- front foglamps,
- daytime running lamps to be more visible during the day,
- guide-me-home lighting to facilitate your exit from the vehicle,
- parking lamps as vehicle position markers.

**i** In the event of the failure of one or more bulbs, a message advises you to check the lamp(s) in question.

## Programming

Certain functions can be configured:

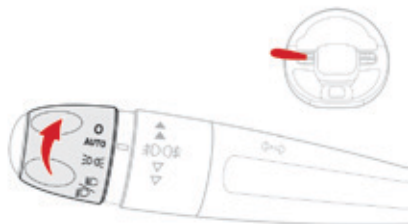
- guide-me-home lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- daytime running lamps.

### **i** Travelling abroad

For motoring in countries that drive on the other side of the road, it is necessary to adapt the adjustment of the dipped beams so as not to dazzle the drivers of approaching vehicles. Contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.







**Without AUTO lighting**

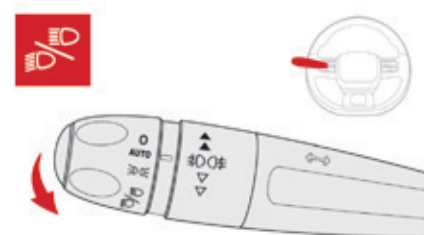


**With AUTO lighting**

### Selection ring for main lighting mode

Turn the ring to position the symbol required facing the mark.

-  Lighting off / Daytime running lamps.
-  Automatic illumination of headlamps.
-  Sidelamps only.
-  Dipped or main beam headlamps.



### Dipping the headlamps

Pull the stalk to switch the lighting between dipped / main beam headlamps.

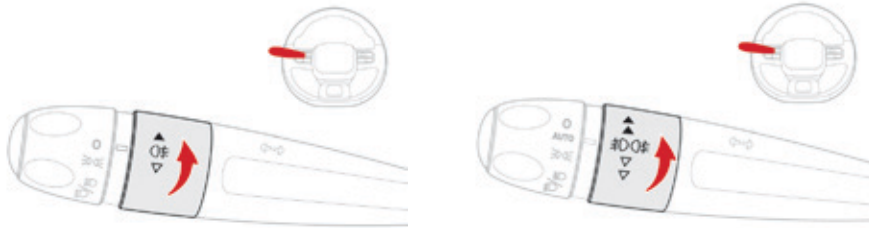
In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

### Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms the lighting switched on.

## Foglamp selection ring

The foglamps operate with dipped and main beam headlamps.



### Rear foglamp only

- ☞ To switch it on, turn the ring forwards.
- When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.
- ☞ To switch it off, turn the ring rearwards.



### Front foglamps and rear foglamp

Rotate and release the ring:

- ☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamp,
- ☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamp,
- ☞ rearwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

When the headlamps switch off with automatic illumination of headlamps (AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

**!** In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamp are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow. In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.

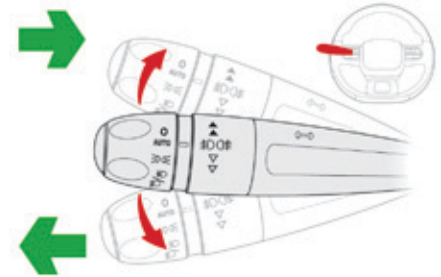
**i Switching off the lamps when the ignition is switched off**

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if guide-me-home lighting is activated.

**i Switching on the lamps after the ignition is switched off**

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "0" position - lamps off, then to the desired position. On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on. The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of 30 minutes to avoid discharging the battery.

## Direction indicators



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

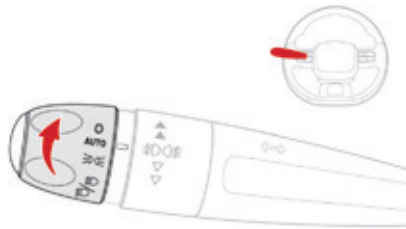
### Three flashes of the direction indicators

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

# Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



## Activation

☞ Turn the ring to the "AUTO" position. Activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

## Deactivation

☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

## Operating fault

### SERVICE

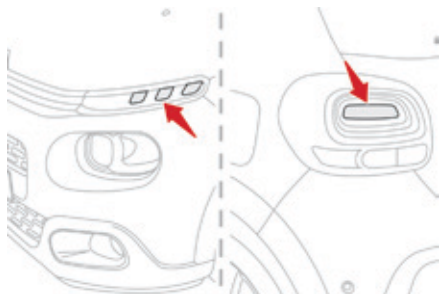
In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

## Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps



The front and rear lamps come on automatically when the engine is started.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk in position "0" or "AUTO" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk in position "AUTO" with low light level or "Sidelamps only" or "Main or dipped beam headlamps").

**i** The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

## Parking lamps



Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

- ☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (e.g. when parking on the left, lighting control stalk upwards, the right-hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel. To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.



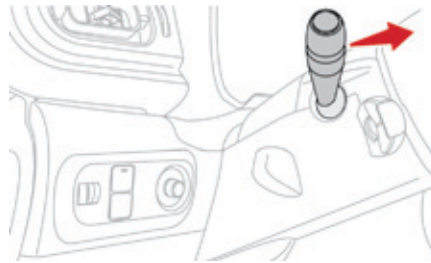
## "Guide-me-home" lighting

### Automatic

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated (lighting control stalk at the AUTO position), if the ambient light level is low, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when switching off the ignition.

Activation or deactivation of the system, as well as the period of operation of the guide-me-home lighting is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

### Manual



The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

### Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

### Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

## Automatic exterior welcome lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated, if the ambient light level is low, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when unlocking the vehicle.

Activation or deactivation of the system, as well as the period of operation of the exterior welcome lighting is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

## Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0. Driver only  
or driver + front passenger.
- Driver + front passenger + rear passengers.
- 1. Driver + front passenger + rear passengers + load in the boot.
- Driver + front passenger + rear passengers + load in the boot.
- 2. Driver only + maximum authorised load in the boot.

This position is sufficient to avoid causing dazzle. Higher settings may limit the spread of light from the headlamps.

**i** The initial setting is position "0".

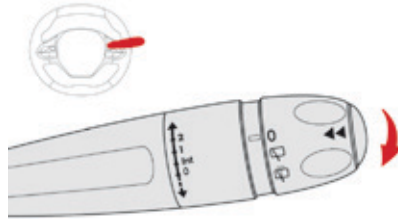
# Wiper control stalk

**i** In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

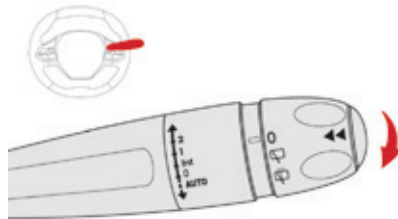
**!** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

## Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.



### With manual wiping



### With AUTO wiping

## Windscreen wipers

Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

**2**

Fast wipe (heavy rain).

**1**

Normal wipe (moderate rain).

**Int**

Intermittent wipe (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

**0**

Park.

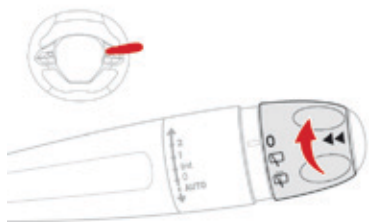


Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

**AUTO ↓**

Automatic wiping (press down, then release) or single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).



## Rear wiper

Rear wiper selection ring:



Park.



Intermittent wipe (proportional to the vehicle speed).



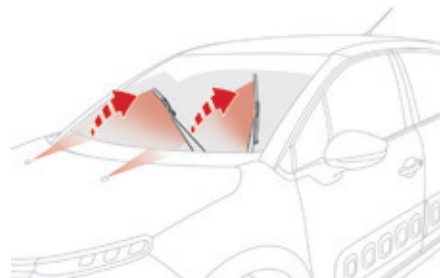
Wash-wipe (set duration).

## Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating. Activation or deactivation of this automatic function can **only** be set via the touch screen.



- In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab.
- Select "**Comfort**" then "**Rear wiper in reverse**".



## Windscreen wash

Pull the wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash, then the windscreen wipers, operate for a pre-determined time.



This function is activated by default.



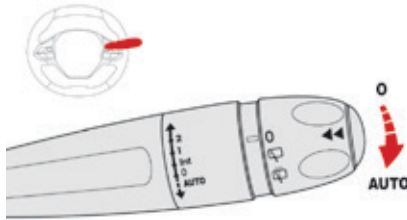
If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.



The screenwash jets are not adjustable. Do not try to move them (risk of damage).

## Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



### Switching on



Briefly push the control stalk downwards.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

This symbol appears in the instrument panel display and a message is displayed.

### Switching off



Briefly push the control stalk downwards again, or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

This symbol disappears from the instrument panel display and a message is displayed.

- i The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated, by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

### Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

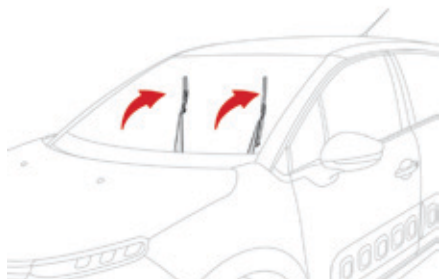


- Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
 

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

## Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition places the wiper blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

- To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:
  - handle them with care,
  - clean them regularly using soapy water,
  - avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
  - replace them at the first signs of wear.

## General safety recommendations

**!** Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

**!** For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

### **!** We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

### **!** Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

**!** Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle...

## Hazard warning lamps    Horn



Visual warning with all of the direction indicators flashing to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.

☞ Press this button, all of the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

### **Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps**

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.



# Emergency or assistance call



## Localised Emergency Call

**SOS**

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"\* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.

The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

Localised Emergency Call immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language\*\* and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services\*\*. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

**!** If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

**i** If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

\* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

\*\* Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or at [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).

# 5

## Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.

In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

**i** The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

## Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

## Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

**i** If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

**i** For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

\*\* Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or at [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).

# Emergency or assistance call



## Localised Emergency Call

**SOS**

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" call centre\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.

It goes off at the end of the call.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language\*\*, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services\*\*. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

**!** If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

**i** If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the Internet website for your country.


\* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

\*\* Depending on the geographical cover of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.


The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or at [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).

5

## Operation of the system


 When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

**For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.**

 The red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

**For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.**

 The red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

**i** A fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

## Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

## Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance CallLocalisé" to confirm.

**i** If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

**i** For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "Telematic services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

\*\* Depending on the geographical cover of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or at [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk).

# Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) incorporating the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

## Definitions

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contributes towards improved control on corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

### Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered according to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

### Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

### Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

# 5

## Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp indicates that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.



When this warning lamp comes on, coupled with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**

In both cases, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

**i** When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.  
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

**i** **In emergency braking, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

## Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

### Activation

This system is activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

It comes into operation in the event of a problem of grip.



This is indicated by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

### Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

Reactivate the systems as soon as the level of grip permits.



Deactivation is via the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.  
It is confirmed by a message.

### Reactivation

The system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually.



Reactivation is via the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.  
It is confirmed by a message.

### Operating fault



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicate a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



After an impact, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### ! ASR / DSC

These systems offer even greater safety during normal driving but should not encourage the driver to take additional risks or drive at excessively high speed.

It is when the traction conditions deteriorate (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. Therefore, for your safety, it is essential to leave these systems active in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The operation of these systems is assured on condition that the manufacturer's recommendations concerning the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the CITROËN network fitting and repair procedures are complied with.

To ensure the effectiveness of these systems in winter conditions, it is essential to fit the vehicle with four snow tyres which will enable the vehicle to maintain neutral handling.

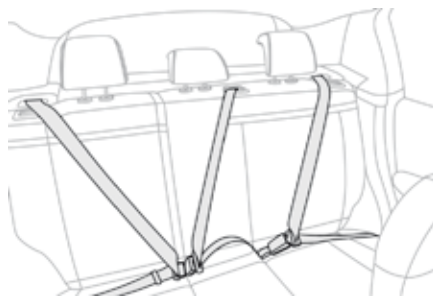
## Seat belts

### Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants. The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on. The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

### Rear seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt. The side seats have a pretensioning system and a force limiter.

### Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.



## Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamps



### Symbols LCD instrument panel.

- A. Front left seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
- B. Front right seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.



### Text LCD instrument panel.

- C. Front and rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.



1. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
3. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.



From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flash(es) for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp(s) remain(s) on until the driver or front passenger fastens their seat belt.

## Front seat belt warning lamps



On switching on the ignition, warning lamp(s) A and/or B or C (depending on the instrument panel) come(s) on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp (1 or 2) comes on in red in the passenger's seat belt and front airbag warning lamp display, if the driver's seat belt or passengers' seat belts are not fastened or are unfastened.

5

## Rear seat belt warning lamps



The corresponding warning lamp (3 to 5) comes on in red in the seat belt and front airbag warning lamp display, if one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

## i Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfill their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

## Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

## In the event of an impact

**Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact**, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

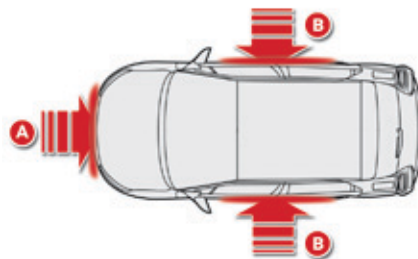
# Airbags

## General information

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).

If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.



### Impact detection zones

- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

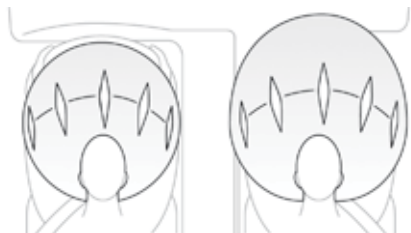
#### **!** The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

**i** Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of detonation associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

## Front airbags



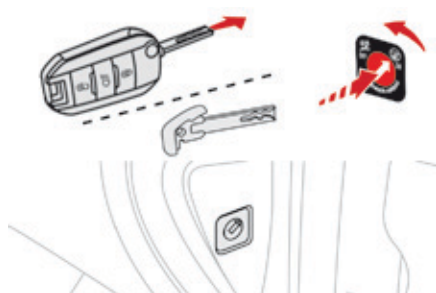
System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

### Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.



### Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.

- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the "OFF" position.
- ☞ Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes in the seat belt warning lamps display screen or in the instrument panel. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

**!** To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

### Reactivating the passenger's front airbag

When you remove a **rearward facing** child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the "ON" position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.



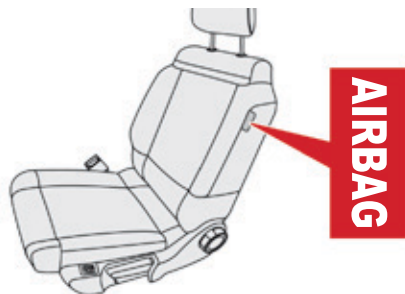
When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning lamps display screen or in the instrument panel for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

### Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

## Lateral airbags



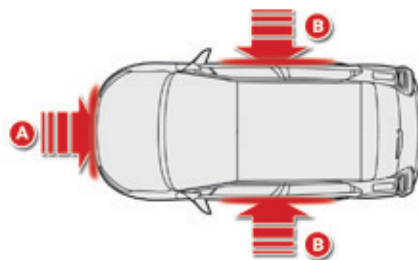
System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

## Deployment

A lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



## Impact detection zones

- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

## Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

### Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

### Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.  
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags is deployed.

## ! Advice

**For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:**

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment. Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel, the dashboard or the passenger's sun visor as this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

### Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

### Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - Risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings\*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

- **CITROËN recommends** that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:
  - **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
  - **forward facing** over the age of 3.

\* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.



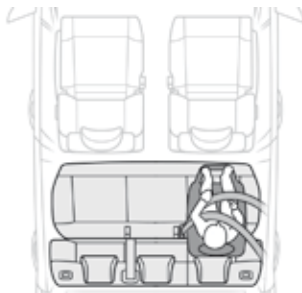
## Child seat at the rear

### Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

### Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

- i** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.  
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

### Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

## Child seat in the front\*

### Rearward facing



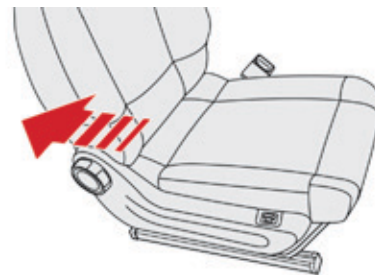
When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the fully back position, with the backrest straightened.

The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.**

### Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the fully back position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.



**Passenger seat adjusted to the fully back position.**

- i** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.  
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

\* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.

## Deactivating the passenger front airbag

**!** Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



Passenger airbag OFF



**i** For more information on the **Airbags**, refer to the corresponding section.




5

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الورااء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة امان هوائية أمامية مغلقة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumistujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNĚHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVE. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSZÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÜLYÖS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aiz muguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWA PODUSZKE POWIETRZNA w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitvev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.





# Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg	
 <p><b>L1</b> "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearward facing position.</p>	 <p><b>L5</b> "RÖMER KIDFIX XP" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.</p>	 <p><b>L6</b> "GRACO Booster" The child is restrained by the seat belt.</p>

## Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat			Passenger's front airbag	Weight of the child / indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From 1 to about 3 years	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From 3 to about 6 years	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From 6 to about 10 years
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat		Deactivated "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 (d)	Seat behind the driver's seat			U	U	U	U
	Seat behind the passenger's seat			U	U	U	U
	Centre rear seat (e)			U	U	U	U

5

**U:** seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and approved for universal use rearward facing and/or forward facing.

**UF:** seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and approved for universal use forward facing.

**X:** seating position not suitable for installing a child seat for the weight group indicated.

- (a)** Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b)** Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
- (c)** Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
- (d)** To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.
- (e)** A child seat with a support leg must never be installed at this seating position.

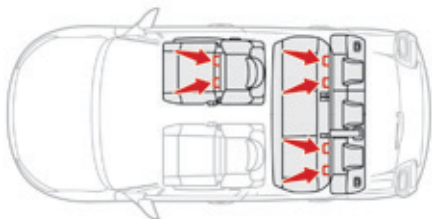
**i** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.



## "ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulation**.

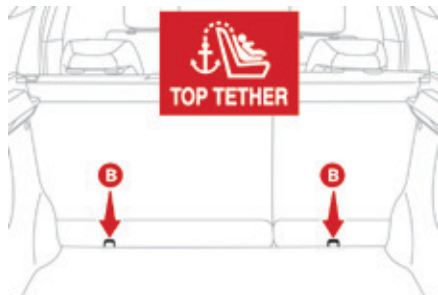
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, located behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **Top Tether** for fixing the upper strap.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**.

Some seats also have an **upper strap**, known as the Top Tether, which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

# 5

**!** The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Follow strictly the fitting instructions provided by with the child seat.

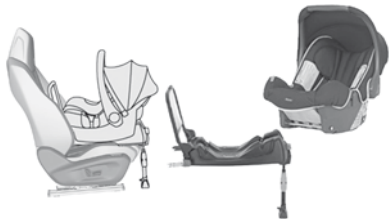
**i** For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

# ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

## "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" and its ISOFIX base (size category: E)

**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.

## "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: B1)

**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**



Is installed only in the forward facing position.

Is attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

**i** Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's fitting instructions for information on installing and removing the seat.

## Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Weight of the child / indicative age										
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years					
Type of ISOFIX child seat		Cot		Rearward facing			Rearward facing		Forward facing			
ISOFIX size category		F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1	
Seat		Passenger's front airbag										
Row 1 (a)	Passenger's seat	Deactivated "OFF"	X	IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF / IL-SU			
		Activated "ON"	X	X			X		IUF / IL-SU			
Row 2	Seat behind driver's seat		X(1)	IL-SU(3)	IL-SU	IL-SU(3)	IL-SU	IUF / IL-SU				
	Seat behind passenger's seat		X(1)	IL-SU(2)	IL-SU	IL-SU(2)	IL-SU	IUF / IL-SU				
	Centre rear seat		Not ISOFIX									

5

**(a)** Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child at this seating position.

**IUF:** seating position suitable for the installation of an Isofix **U**niversal seat, **F**orward facing secured using the upper strap.

**IL-SU:** seating position suitable for the installation of an Isofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a cot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

**X:** seating position not suitable for the installation for an ISOFIX seat or cot of the weight group indicated.

**(1):** the installation of the cot at this seating position may prevent the use of one or more seats in this row.

**(2):** adjust the front seat to the fully forward position.

**(3):** adjust the front seat to 16 notches minimum from the fully rearward position.

**i** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

## Locations for i-Size child seats

The i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

The i-Size child seats also have:





- either an upper strap which is attached to the ring **B**
- or a support leg which sits on the vehicle's floor, compatible with the seat approved for i-Size

the role of which is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

5

Seating position			Passenger's front airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat		Deactivated, "OFF"	i-U
			Activated, "ON"	i-UF
Row 2	Seat behind the driver's seat			i-U
	Seat behind the front passenger's seat			i-U
	Centre rear seat			Not i-Size

- i-U:** suitable for i-Size restraint systems of the "Universal" category, forward facing or rearward facing.
  - i-UF:** only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, forward facing.
  - X:** seating position not suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category.
- (a)** Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seating position.

**i** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

## ! Advice

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, in contact if possible.

You must remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

### Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

### Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

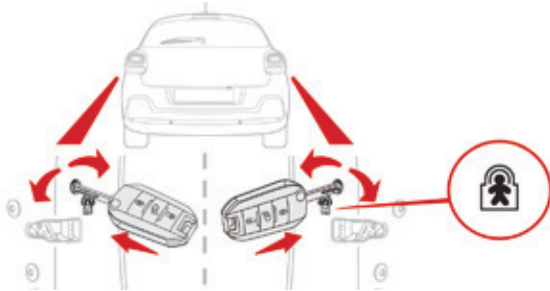
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

## Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.  
The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door.  
It is identified by a marking on the bodywork.



### Turning the child lock on

- Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
  - to the right on the left-hand rear door,
  - to the left on the right-hand rear door.

**!** Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

### Turning the child lock off

- Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
  - to the left on the left-hand rear door,
  - to the right on the right-hand rear door.



## Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.

Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

As a safety precaution, the driver must only carry out actions requiring sustained attention when the vehicle is stationary.

On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

### Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system! Risk of fire!  
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, do not park or leave the engine running over areas where inflammable substances and materials are present: grass, leaves, etc.

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

## When towing

### Distribution of loads

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

For more information on **Weights**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

### Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

**i** If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

### Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

### Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

### Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Adjusting the headlamp beam height**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

## Anti-theft protection

### Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

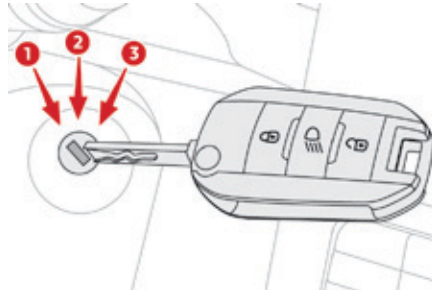
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by a message in the instrument panel screen.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a CITROËN dealer if required.

**!** For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

## Starting / Switching off the engine with the key Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key, steering column locked,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

### Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

**i** Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction. It could adversely affect the deployment of the front airbag.

**!** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- ☞ depress the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox),  
or
- ☞ press the brake pedal firmly (automatic gearbox),
- ☞ insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- ☞ unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

**i** In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- ☞ With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

**i** In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

**!** If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

**!** Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death!  
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position 1.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

**i** To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

**!** Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

**i** When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

## Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

**i** For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

## **i** Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour. To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

# Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

## Starting the engine



- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.
  - ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the clutch pedal.
- or
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector at position **P** or **N**.
  - ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the brake pedal.



- ☞ Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.

For **Diesel engines**, in temperatures below zero and/or with a cold engine, the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, you should keep the clutch pedal fully depressed until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.
- or
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, you should keep the brake pedal fully depressed until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

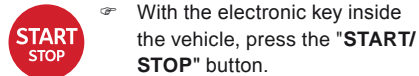
**i** The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" electronic key in the recognition zone is essential. If the electronic key is not detected in this zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into this zone so that the engine can be started. If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected - Back-up starting" section.

**!** If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed in the instrument panel. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column; a message warns you when this is needed.

**!** As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle while the engine is running.

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, engine at idle.
  - ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.
- or
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector at position **P** or **N**.



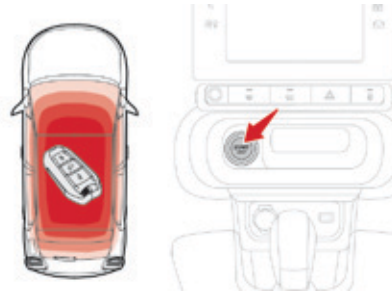
The engine stops and the steering column locks.

**i** If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

**!** Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

**!** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Ignition on (without starting)

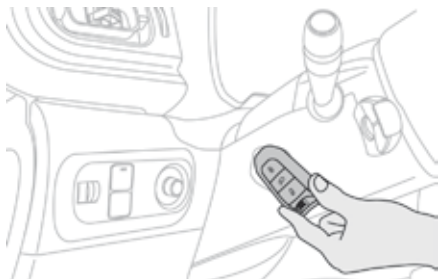


With the Keyless Entry and Starting remote control inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on. This also allows the accessories to be used (for example: audio system, lighting...).

- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
- ☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

**i** With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

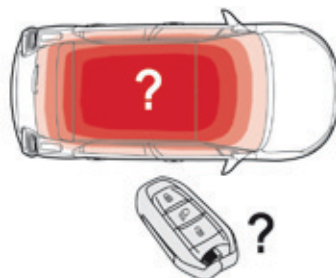
## Key not detected



### Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column to allow the engine to be started if the system does not detect the key in the recognition zone, or when the battery in the electronic key is discharged.

- ☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
- ☞ If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, select position **P** then press the brake pedal firmly.
- ☞ Press the **"START/STOP"** button.  
The engine starts.



### Back-up switch off

When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.



- ☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the **"START/STOP"** button for about five seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Emergency switch-off



In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).  
Press the **"START/STOP"** button for about five seconds.  
In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.



# Parking brake

## Application



- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

## Release



- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up slightly, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.



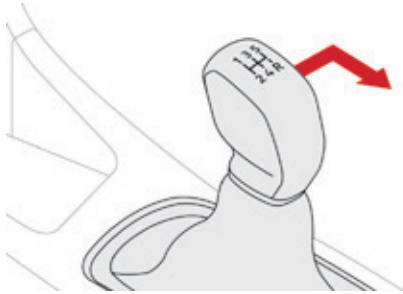
When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.



When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

# 5-speed manual gearbox

## Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Press the clutch pedal fully down.
- ☞ Push the gear lever fully to the right then backwards.

**!** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

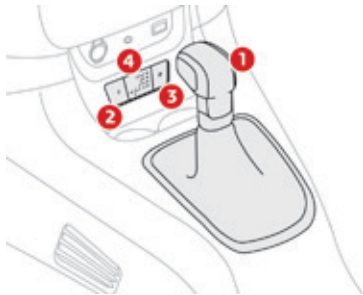
**i** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

# Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

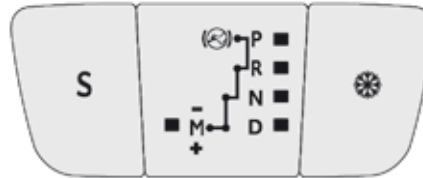
Six-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing. Two driving modes are available:

- **automatic** operation with electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving and a **snow** programme to make driving easier when grip is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.



1. Gear selector.
2. Button "S" (sport).
3. Button "\*" (snow).
4. Gear selector positions graphic.

## Gear selector positions



- P.** Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
  - Starting the engine.
- R.** Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
- N.** Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
  - Starting the engine.
- D.** Automatic operation.
- M + / -.** Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Push backwards to change up a gear or
  - ☞ Push forwards to change down a gear.

## Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the selector to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

- P.** Park
- R.** Reverse
- N.** Neutral
- D.** Drive (Automatic driving)
- S.** Sport programme
- \*** Snow programme
- 1 2 3 4 5 6.** Gears engaged during manual operation
- . Invalid value during manual operation

## Foot on brake



- ☞ Press the brake pedal when this indicator lamp is displayed in the instrument panel (e.g. starting the engine).

## Moving off

- ☞ Apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Select position **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Start the engine.

If these conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

- ☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
- ☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

**i** If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

If the temperature is below -23°C, the engine should be left at idle for four minutes, to ensure the correct operation and life of the engine and gearbox.

**!** When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

## Automatic operation

- ☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached. On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

**!** Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

## Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

### Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button "S", after starting the engine. The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

### Snow programme "❄"

☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine. The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads. This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

## Return to standard automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

## Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Move the selector towards the + sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Move the selector towards the - sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time. When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox engages first gear automatically.

The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

## Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

- i** If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, a warning message appears in the screen.
    - ☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the message disappears.
- When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

## Operating fault

**SERVICE** When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox fault. In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

**!** There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the movement of the selector from the **P** position to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when at a prolonged standstill with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), put the selector in the **N** position and apply the parking brake.

# Gear efficiency indicator\*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

## Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system. This function cannot be deactivated.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

On certain BlueHDi Diesel versions with manual gearbox, the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start) in certain driving conditions. In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

**i** The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, etc.). The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- changing down.

**i** On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

\* Depending on engine.

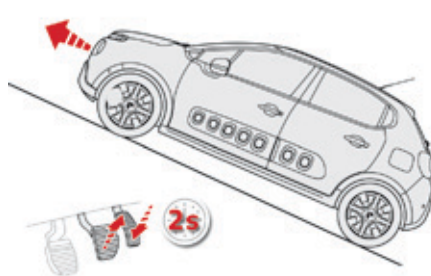
## Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

It only operates when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- particular conditions on a slope are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

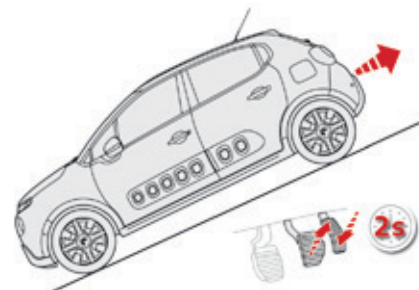
This hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.



**On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.**

With a manual gearbox, if you are in first gear or neutral.

With an automatic gearbox, if you are in position **D** or **M**.



**On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.**

**!** Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp is on (but not flashing) in the instrument panel.

## Operating fault



**SERVICE**

If a fault in the system occurs, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



# Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently. Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

## Going into engine STOP mode



With a **manual gearbox**, vehicle stationary, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically when you place the gear lever in neutral and you release the clutch pedal.



With an **automatic gearbox**, vehicle stationary, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector in position **N**.



For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear. Stop & Start does not affect the operation of vehicle systems such as braking, power steering, etc.



Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

## Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)



A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

## Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (rising or falling),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.



In this case, this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Going into engine START mode



With an **automatic gearbox**, this warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically when:

- you release the brake pedal with the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
- you are in position **N** with the brake pedal released and you move the gear selector to position **D** or **M**,
- you engage reverse.



With a **manual gearbox**, this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel and the engine restarts automatically when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal.

## Special cases: START invoked automatically

As a safety measure or to maintain comfort levels in the vehicle, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h),
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.



In this case, this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Deactivation / Reactivation

In certain circumstances, such as the need to maintain the temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on.

If the engine is in STOP mode, it then restarts.

The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

### ! Opening the bonnet



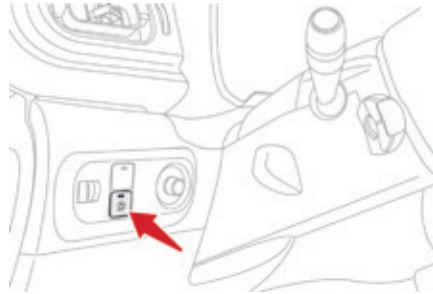
#### STOP & START SYSTEM

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

### ! Driving on flooded roads

Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system. For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

### With the switch on the dashboard



☞ Press this switch.

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of the indicator lamp in the control switch and the display of a message.

Pressing the switch again reactivates the system.

The indicator lamp in the switch goes off, accompanied by the display of a message.

## Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the system, the indicator lamp in the button flashes for a few moments, then remains on.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall.

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.

It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification. All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. For more information on the **12 V Battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Memorising speeds

This function allows speeds to be saved, which can then be offered to set the two systems: the speed limiter (to limit the speed of the vehicle) or the cruise control (for a vehicle cruising speed).

You can memorise up to six speed settings for each of the two systems.

By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

### Modifying a speed setting

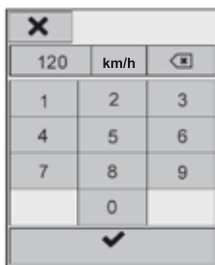


This function is accessible in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select the **"Driving functions"** tab.
- ☞ Select **"Adjusting Speeds"**.



As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.



- ☞ Select the **"Speed limiter"** or **"Cruise control"** tab, depending on the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings.
- ☞ Select the speed setting you want to modify.
- ☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.
- ☞ Confirm to save the modifications and quit the menu.

### "MEM" button



This button allows you to select a memorised speed setting for use with the speed limiter or the cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or the **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

# Speed limit recognition

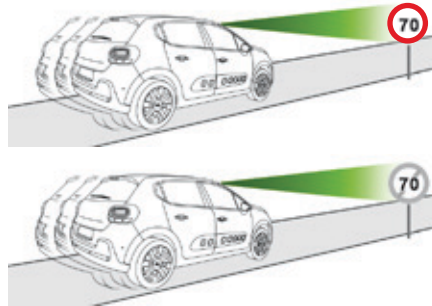
This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.

The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

**!** The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit. For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

## Principles



Using a camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs.

The system also takes account of information on speed limits from the navigation system mapping.

**i** It is necessary to update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate information on speed limits from the system.

**!** The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic.

It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period.

The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

**i** To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.

## Activation / Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

## Display in the instrument panel



The system is activated: "MAX" is displayed in the instrument panel.

The information relating to the speed limit recognition is displayed after the trip computer data.

To display it:



☞ Press the button, located on the end of the wiper control stalk.



☞ Press the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value detected, accompanied by a message.

## Cruise control or speed limiter activated



The driver can adjust the speed of the vehicle according to the information given by the system.

A message is displayed and "MEM" flashes in the display.

## Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- trailer, caravan,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers,
- ...

The system may be disrupted or not work at all in the following situations:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area ahead of the camera dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

## Memorising the speed setting

This memorisation is in addition to the display of **Speed limit recognition**.



The driver can choose to adapt the speed setting to the speed limit suggested, by pressing the memorisation button at the speed limiter / cruise control switch.

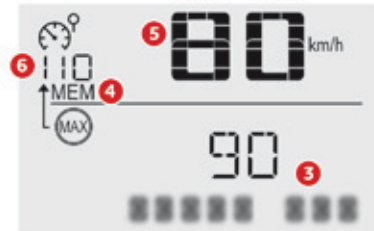
This speed setting then replaces the previous speed setting for the speed limiter and/or cruise control.

**i** For more information on the **Speed limiter** or the **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.



### Steering mounted controls

1. Select speed limiter / cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.



### Display in the instrument panel

3. Speed limiter indication.
4. Memorise the speed.
5. Current vehicle speed.
6. Current speed setting.

## Memorising the speed



☞ Switch on the speed limiter / cruise control. Speed limiter / cruise control information is displayed.



On detection of a speed limit sign, the system displays the speed limit value and a message offering to make it a new speed setting. "MEM" flashes in the screen for a few seconds.

**i** If the difference between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the recognition system is less than 6 mph (10 km/h), the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.



☞ Make an **initial** press on this button to request saving of the speed suggested.  
**MEM**

A message invites you to confirm the request by pressing again.



☞ Press this button **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.  
**MEM**

After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.



# Speed limiter

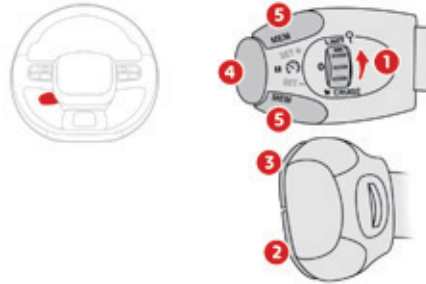
System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.  
The minimum programmed speed is 20 mph (30 km/h).

The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

**!** The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

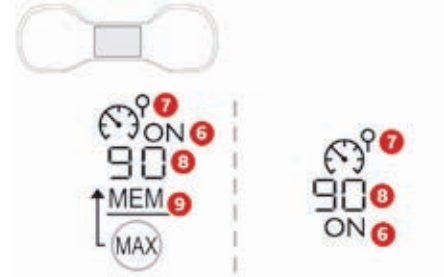
## Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Increase the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On / Pause.
5. Accept the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system or, depending on version, Display the memorised speed settings.

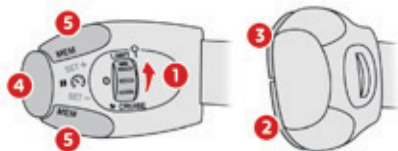
For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on / pause indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed setting value.
9. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

## Switching on



- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel 1 to the "LIMIT" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button 4 to switch the speed limiter on.



- ☞ Pressing button 4 again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

## Adjusting the limit speed setting

To modify the limit speed setting:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button 2 or 3,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button 2 or 3.

To modify the speed limiter setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button 5; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button 5 again to save the suggested speed.

This value is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new speed limiter setting.

To modify the limit speed setting using

memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button 5 to display the six memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

## Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.



**!** On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver, there is an audible signal to complete the alert. Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



## Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "0" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

## Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

## Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

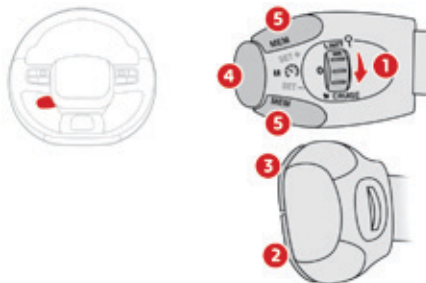
- i** The cruise control is **switched on** manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h), as well as:
- with a manual gearbox, the engagement of third gear or higher,
  - with an automatic gearbox, the gear selector in **D** mode or second gear or higher in **M** mode.
- Speed regulation remains active after changing gear on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.

The operation of the cruise control can be interrupted (pause):

- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

- i** Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

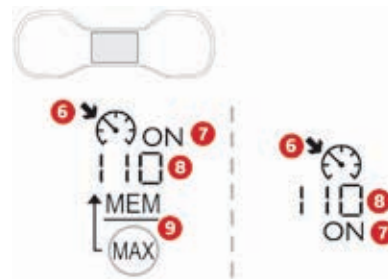
### Steering mounted controls



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lower the cruise setting.
3. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raise the cruise setting.
4. Pause / Resume cruise control.
5. Accept the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system or, depending on version, Display the memorised speed settings.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

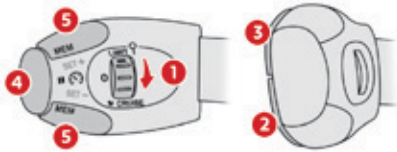
### Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control mode selected indication.
7. Cruise control pause / resume indication.
8. Programmed cruise speed setting.
9. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

**!** The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

## Switching on



- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel 1 to the "CRUISE" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



- ☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button 2 or 3: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting. You can release the accelerator pedal.



- ☞ Pressing button 4 interrupts operation of the system (pause).



- ☞ Pressing button 4 again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).



## Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button 2 or 3,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button 2 or 3.

**!** Take care: pressing and holding button 2 or 3 results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button 5; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button 5 again to save the suggested speed.

This value is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new cruise speed setting.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

**!** As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

## Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

When required (overtaking manoeuvre, etc.), it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.



To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal. Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



**!** When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.

To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

## Switching off

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

## Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** Only use the cruise control if the traffic conditions will allow you to drive for a certain time at a steady speed and at a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow, etc.). In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the cruise speed set: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb, etc.

**!** The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

# Fatigue detection system

It is recommended that you take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

## Activation / Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

For more information on the menu, refer to the part covering your screen in the "Dashboard instruments" section.

The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

**!** The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Do not take the wheel if you are tired.

## Driving time warning

The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).



This alert takes the form of the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

**i** As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby. The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

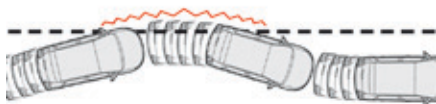


# Lane Departure Warning System

System which, using a camera which recognises solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.

To provide safe driving, the camera analyses the image then, if the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



**!** This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

## Activation / Deactivation



Activation and deactivation of the function is done by pressing this button.

The indicator lamp in the button indicates the status of the function:

- On: the function is activated.
- Off: the function is deactivated.

The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Detection



If an unexpected change of direction is detected, you are alerted by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel and an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted if a direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

## Operating fault

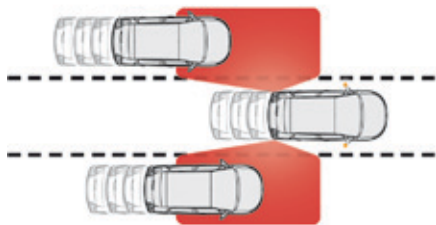


In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for approximately 10 seconds then switches off.

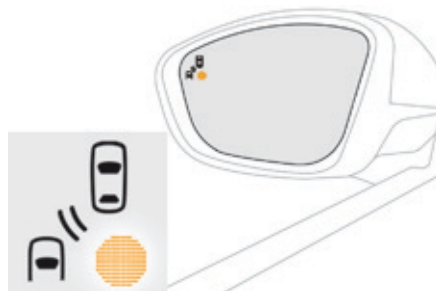
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** The detection may be impeded:
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
  - if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface,
  - if the windscreen is dirty,
  - in certain weather conditions: fog, heavy rain, snow, shade, bright sunlight or direct exposure to the sun (low sun, leaving a tunnel, etc.).

# Blind Spot Monitoring System



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A fixed warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

## Activation / Deactivation

Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the vehicle configuration menu.



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

To deactivate the system, go to the vehicle configuration menu again. The indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in memory on switching off the ignition.

**!** This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane. This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

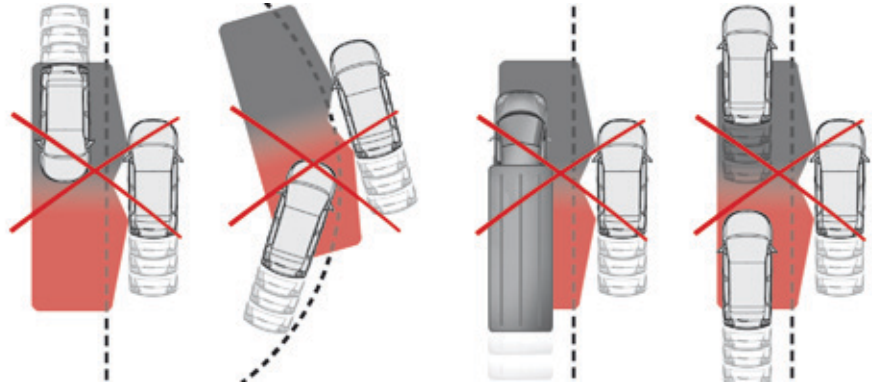
**i** The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

## Operation

The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, bicycle - is detected.

The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,

- when overtaking (or being overtaken by) a very long vehicle (lorry, coach, etc.) which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

## Operating fault



In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp and the display of a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.

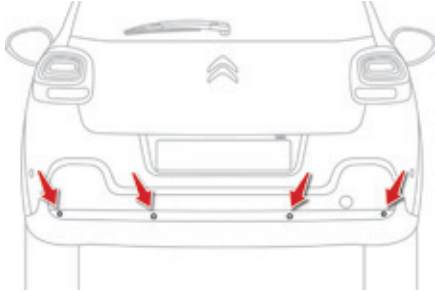
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.



### High pressure jet wash

When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

# Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper. Certain types of obstacle (e.g. stake, roadworks cone) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

**!** This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

## Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is confirmed by an audible signal. The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.



## Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. The sound emitted by the speaker (right-hand or left-hand) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.



## Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

## Deactivation / Activation

Deactivation or activation of the system is done via the vehicle configuration menu.

- i** The system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towbar (vehicle fitted with a towbar installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).

## Operating fault

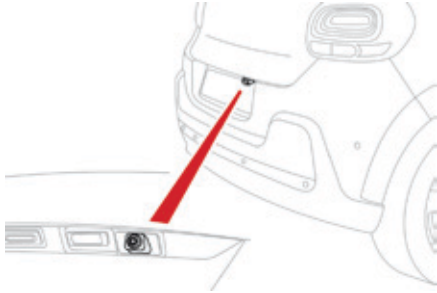
**SERVICE** In the event of a fault, when reverse gear is engaged, this warning lamp lights up in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

- i** In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

- i** **High pressure jet wash**  
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance within 30 cm of the sensors.

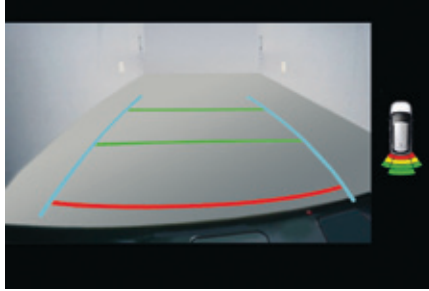
## Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. The image is displayed in the touch screen.

**i** The reversing camera function may be supplemented with parking sensors.

**!** The reversing camera cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle (the gap represents the width of your vehicle except for the door mirrors). The red lines represent a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper. The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

It is normal to see part of the number plate displayed at the bottom of the screen.

**!** Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

**i** Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

**i** **High pressure jet washing**  
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance within 30 cm of the camera lens.


## Under-inflation detection


System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.


The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.

It compares the information given by the four wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.


 The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey. Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (high loading, high speed, long journey).

 Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

 The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label. For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

 **Snow chains**  
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.



## Under-inflation alert



This is given by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**!** The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
  - ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- or
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

**i** The alert is maintained until the system is reinitialised.

## Reinitialisation

It is necessary to reinitialise the system every time one or more tyre pressures are adjusted, and after changing one or more wheels.

- !** Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the use of the vehicle and in line with the recommendations on the tyre pressure label. The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted. The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Reinitialisation of the system must be done with the **ignition on** and the vehicle stationary:

- in the vehicle configuration menu, for vehicles fitted with a display screen,
- using the instrument panel display or the button on the dashboard, for vehicles without a display screen.

## Touch screen



Reinitialisation of the function is done in the **Driving** menu.

- ☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab.
- ☞ In the page, select the "**Under-inflation initialisation**" function.
- ☞ Select "**Yes**" to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

## Monochrome screen C



Reinitialisation of the function is done in the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu of the screen.

- ☞ Select the "**Define the vehicle parameters**" menu.

- ☞ Select the "**Comfort**" menu.
- ☞ Select the "**Tyre inflation**" menu.
- ☞ Select the "**Reinitialisation**" function.
- ☞ Select "**Yes**" to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by an audible signal.

## Instrument panel display

- ☞ Make a short press on this button **SET 000** to access the menu.
- ☞ Select the corresponding item then confirm.

A high tone audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

A low tone audible signal indicates that the reinitialisation was not completed.

## Dashboard button



- ☞ Make a long press on this button.

A high tone audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

A low tone audible signal indicates that the reinitialisation was not completed.

## Operating fault



**SERVICE**

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

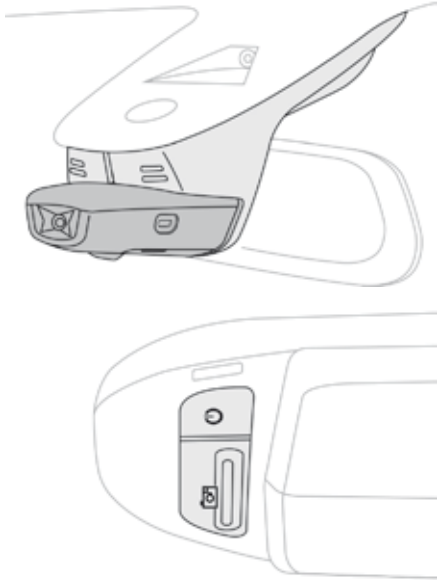
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

# ConnectedCAM CITROËN™\*



This camera, installed at the top of the windscreen and connected wirelessly, permits:

- the taking of photos and videos by pressing the dedicated control,
- the sending of the vehicle's GPS coordinates to a smartphone,
- the recording of secure videos: a sensor (accelerometer) automatically triggers the camera in the event of an impact,
- the sharing of photos and videos by email, text and on social media via the "ConnectedCAM CITROËN™" application on a smartphone.

**i** As the use of the ConnectedCAM CITROËN™ is under your control and your responsibility, you must ensure that data protection regulations (images of other people, vehicle number plates, protected buildings, etc.), the highway code and road safety regulations are complied with. Check first that your insurance company accepts the films collected from the ConnectedCAM CITROËN™ as evidence.

\* Depending on the country of sale.

## Operation

In order to be able to use all of the functions of the camera, you must carry out the following operations:

- ☞ download the "**ConnectedCAM CITROËN™**" application onto a smartphone,
- ☞ pair the smartphone with the camera following the instructions given by the application.

Pairing is necessary at the first connection. After this it will be automatic.

The default pairing code is: ConnectedCam.

### On



- ☞ Press and hold this button to switch the camera on.  
The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

When the camera is switched on, video recording is automatic and permanent.

### Off



- ☞ Press and hold this button to switch the camera off.  
The indicator lamp in the button switches off.

If you switch the camera off manually, it will remain off even after restarting the vehicle. You must switch it back on manually.

## Managing photos and videos



- ☞ Press this button briefly to take a photo.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been taken into account.



- ☞ Press and hold this button to record a video.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been taken into account.

Using the "**ConnectedCAM CITROËN™**" application, you will then be able to share your photos and videos automatically and immediately on social media or by email.

A "micro USB" port also permits retrieval of the data from the camera onto other media such as: computers, tablets, etc.

## System reset



Pressing and holding these two buttons simultaneously resets the system.

This action clears all the data recorded on the camera and resets the camera's default pairing code.



As a safety precaution, the driver must not use the ConnectedCAM CITROËN™ application accessible from a smartphone while driving. They must carry out all actions requiring sustained attention when the vehicle is stationary.

## Operating fault



If a system fault occurs, the indicator lamp in the button flashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# TOTAL & CITROËN

## Partners in performance and protecting the environment

### Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 years, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed lubricants for CITROËN, to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.

For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain the best performance from your engine.

### Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performance of your engine, while also protecting the environment.



7



CITROËN prefers TOTAL



# Fuel tank

## Capacity of the tank:

- Petrol: approximately 45 litres.
- Diesel: approximately 42 or 50 litres (depending on version).

## Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on, accompanied by an audible warning, a message and the last bar of the fuel gauge flashes in red.

When it first comes on, **about 5 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message. This audible warning and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards "0". Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

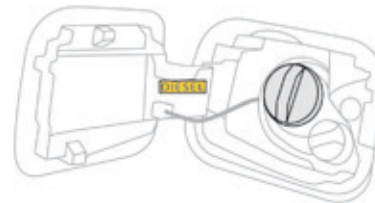
**i** For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Refuelling

A label on the inside of the fuel filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine type. Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

**!** If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.



To refuel in complete safety:

- 🔑 **You must switch off the engine.**
- 🔑 Open the filler flap.
- 🔑 Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct type of fuel for your vehicle.
- 🔑 Introduce the key into the cap then turn it to the left, or turn the cap manually to the left (depending on version).



- ☞ Remove the cap and place it on its support (on the filler flap).
- ☞ Introduce the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Maintain this position throughout the refuelling operation.

Once you have finished refuelling:

- ☞ Refit the filler cap.
- ☞ Turn the key to the right then remove it from the cap, or turn the cap manually to the right (depending on version).
- ☞ Push the fuel flap to close it.

**If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the 3<sup>rd</sup> cut-off; this could cause malfunctions.**

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

**For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.**

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be introduced.

**!** **If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.**

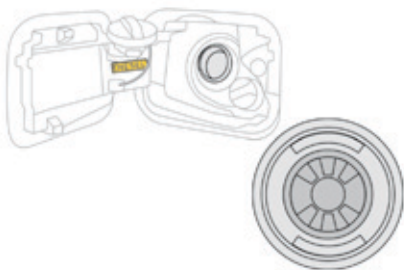
## Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

## Misfuel prevention (Diesel)\*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

### Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

**Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

**i** It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

### **i** Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

\* Depending on the country of sale.



## Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



- Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.



**i** The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

## Travelling abroad

**Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.** For any additional information, contact your dealer.

## Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



- Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".



For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

**i** The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

## Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

**i** The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

**i** It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.






Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Type of chain
185/65 R15	Link of 9 mm maximum
195/65 R15	
205/55 R16	
205/50 R17	Cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

### Advice on installation

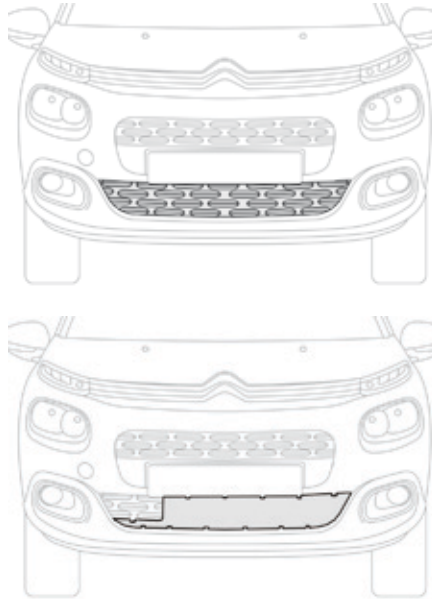
-  If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
-  Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
-  Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
-  Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
-  Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**!** Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

## Very cold climate screen

Removable screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

**!** Before fitting or removing the screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped. It is recommended that the screen be fitted and removed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the screen to the front of the front bumper lower grille.
- ☞ Press on the screen to engage its fixing clips.

### Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to unclip each fixing clip in turn.

- !** Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:
- when the exterior temperature exceeds 10° C (e.g. in summer),
  - when towing,
  - at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

7

## Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

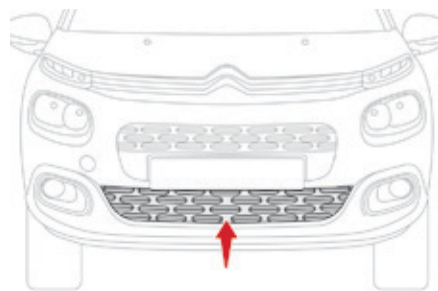
- i** We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  
If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

- i** Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care. For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

- i** For more information on **Weights** (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

- !** You must observe the maximum trailer weight, indicated on the registration certificate or in the technical specification for your vehicle.

## Closer



For towing, the closer must be removed if fitted on your vehicle.

It is located behind the lower air intake grille.

To remove it, consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

## Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

### Switching to economy mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth® hands-free system of your audio system.

### Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

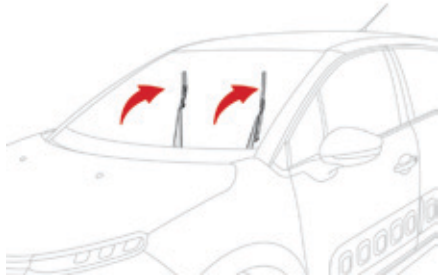
- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

**!** A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.  
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Changing a wiper blade



### Before removing a front wiper blade

- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen,
- or
- ☞ From one minute after switching off the ignition, reposition the arms manually.

### Removing

- ☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

### Fitting

- ☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

### After fitting a front wiper blade

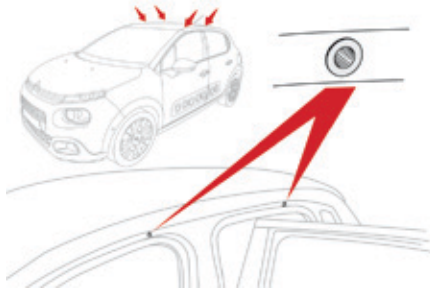
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

**!** Replacement of the arms must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

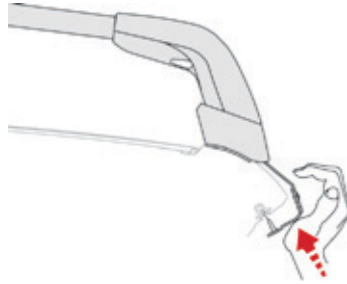
## Roof bars

For safety reasons and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars that are approved for your vehicle.

Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use given in the information provided with the roof bars.



To install the roof bars, you must secure them only to the four anchorage points in the roof frame. These points are masked by the vehicle's doors when closed.



The roof bar fixings include a stud that should be introduced into the aperture at each anchorage point.

### Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute the load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Anchor the load securely and fit a warning flag if part of it overhangs the vehicle.
- ☞ Drive gently, as the vehicle will be more liable to the effects of side winds (vehicle stability may be affected).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars as soon as they are no longer needed.

**i** Maximum load, distributed over the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm: **70 kg**.

This value is subject to change, please check the maximum load stated in the instructions provided with the roof bars. If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

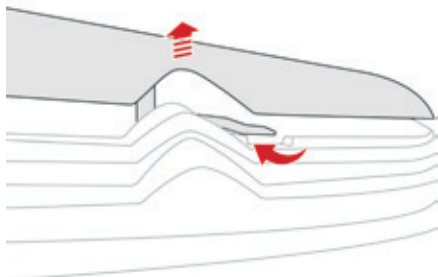
Please refer to national legislation so as to meet the requirements on carrying objects that are longer than the vehicle.

# Bonnet

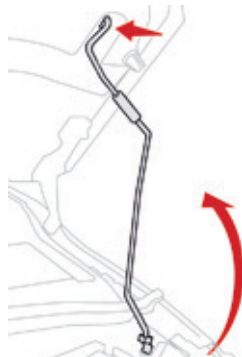
## Opening



- ☞ Open the left-hand front door.
- ☞ Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.



- ☞ Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

## Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of its support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay back into its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it has latched correctly.

**!** The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.  
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.  
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.  
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

**i** Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



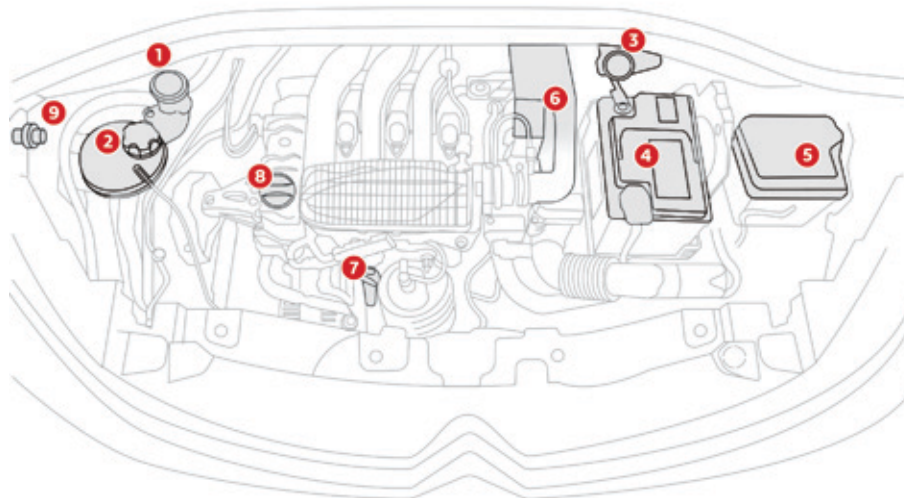
**!** **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.



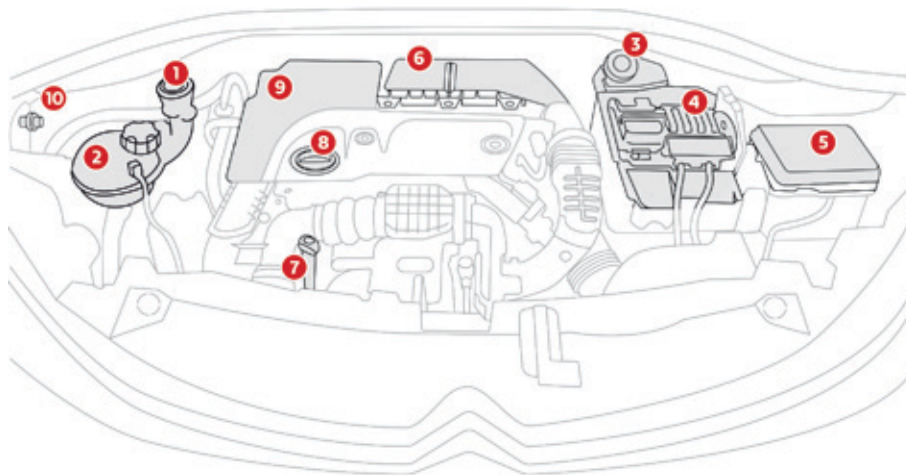
## Petrol engines

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point.



## Diesel engines

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Priming pump\*.
10. Remote earth point.



**!** The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure. All work on the system must only be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

\* According to engine.

# Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

## Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

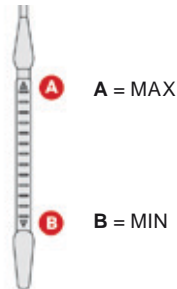
**i** To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

## Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

## Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- 🔧 Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- 🔧 Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- 🔧 Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- 🔧 Add more oil if necessary.
- 🔧 After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

**i** After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

## Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

## Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

## Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

## Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up this fluid between services.

To ensure that the measurement is reliable, the vehicle must be parked on level ground and the engine must be cold.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

**!** **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

When the engine is hot, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding in the event of an urgent need to top up, with a cloth around the cap, unscrew it by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

### Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Screenwash fluid level



Top up the level when necessary.

### Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up or replaced with plain water.

In wintry conditions, it is recommended that you use an ethyl alcohol or methanol based fluid.

## Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

### SERVICE

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

## Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## AdBlue level

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.

To avoid statutory immobilisation of the vehicle, the AdBlue must be topped up.

For more information on **AdBlue and the SCR system**, and in particular topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

## Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

# Checking components

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## 12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

For more information and the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

## Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed. Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

## Particle filter (Diesel)

**SERVICE** The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a warning message.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.

For more information on **Checking levels** and the Diesel additive level in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change). Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

## Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change). Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services. Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

## Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products. After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.



# AdBlue® and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

## SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is held in a special tank with a capacity of about 15 litres: this provides a driving range of about 11 000 miles (18 000 km). An alert is triggered automatically to warn you when the reserve level is reached: you can then drive about 1 500 miles (2 400 km) before the tank is empty.

**!** Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine. If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting. In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting. In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

**i** **Freezing of the AdBlue®**  
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C. The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in all weather conditions.

## Topping up the AdBlue®

### Precautions in use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high exterior temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

**!** Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.  
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

**!** Never dilute AdBlue® with water.  
Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.



The supply in a non-drip container or bottle simplifies topping up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles or 5 or 10 litre containers from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

## Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored **in a cool area** and **protected from direct sunlight**.

Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept **for at least a year**.

If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

**!** Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

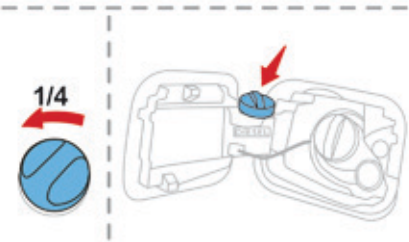
**♻️** Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container provided for this purpose or take them to your dealer.

## Procedure

Before topping up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface. In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

## Park the vehicle

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.
- or
- ☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "START/STOP" button to switch off the engine.



## Open the filler

- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked, open the fuel filler flap; the blue filler cap for the AdBlue® tank is located to the right of the black fuel filler cap.
- ☞ Turn the blue cap a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove the blue cap.



## Top up

- ☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the **use-by date**, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

**!** **Important:** if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine - you must add at least 4 litres and no more than 10 litres.

- ☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

**!** If any fluid is spilt or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.  
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

## Refit the filler cap

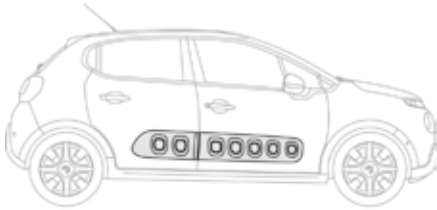
- ☞ Refit the blue cap and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Close the filler flap.

**!** Important: **when topping up after running out of AdBlue**, signalled by the message "**Top up AdBlue: starting impossible**", you must wait for about 5 minutes before switching the ignition on again, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the remote control key into the ignition switch, or placing the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle.** Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

## AIRBUMP® protectors

Made of TPU (Thermo Plastic Urethane) and enclosing bubbles of air, they act as an impact absorber.

Located on the sides of your vehicle, they protect the bodywork by reducing the effect of minor everyday knocks: parking dings, opening doors, scrapes, etc.



### **i** Care of the AIRBUMP® protectors

The AIRBUMP® protectors require no particular care or maintenance.

They are cleaned simply using water or one of the products available from CITROËN dealers.

To avoid problems of premature ageing of the AIRBUMP® protectors, do not use polish on them.

## Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

The triangle can be stored on the rear face of the boot, secured by straps.

## Assembling the triangle

Refer to the instructions provided with the triangle.

## Positioning the triangle

- ☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

## Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.

**i** For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

## BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

## Other HDi engines

**(except BlueHDi version)**

- ☞ Add at least five litres of Diesel fuel to the tank.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Refit the styling cover and clip it in place.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

# Temporary puncture repair kit

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

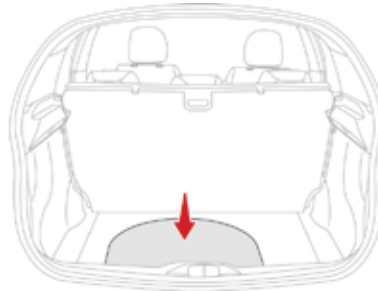
**i** The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

## **i** Tyre under-inflation detection

After repair of the tyre, the warning lamp will remain on until the system is reinitialised.

For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

## Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

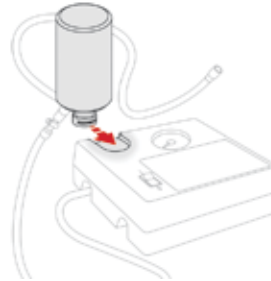
**i** The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

**!** Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

## Repair procedure



- ⚙ Switch off the ignition.
- ⚙ Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.
- ⚙ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- ⚙ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the sealant cartridge.



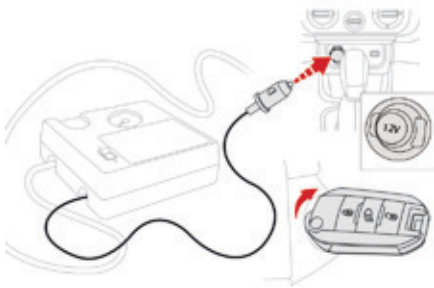
- ⚙ Turn the sealant cartridge and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.



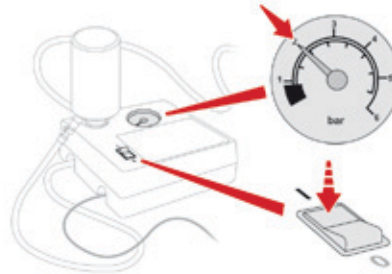
- ⚙ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.
- ⚙ Connect the hose from the sealant cartridge to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

**i** Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.





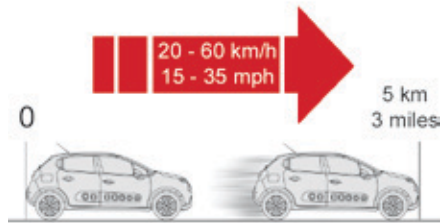
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "I" position and leave it running until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bar. The sealant product is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing and stains).

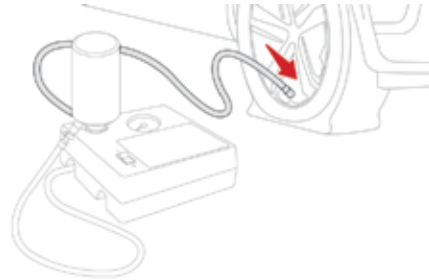
**i** If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

**!** Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date is marked on the cartridge. After use, do not discard the cartridge by the roadside, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Don't forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



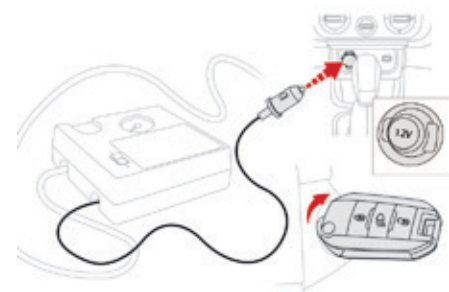
- ☞ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit.
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

## Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

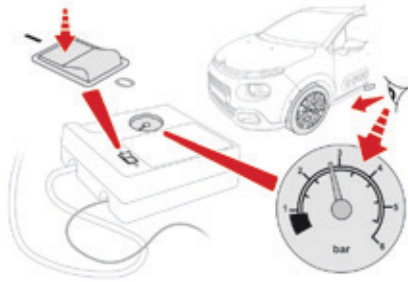


You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and if necessary adjust the tyre pressures

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.



- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



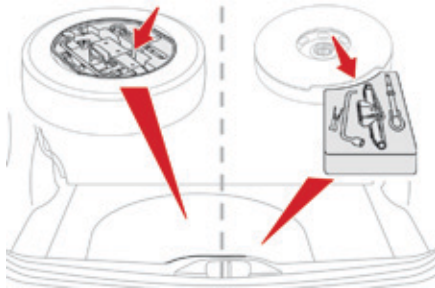
- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "I" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.  
To deflate: press the black button on the compressor pipe, at the valve connector.
- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.  
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Spare wheel

Procedure for changing a wheel with a punctured tyre for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

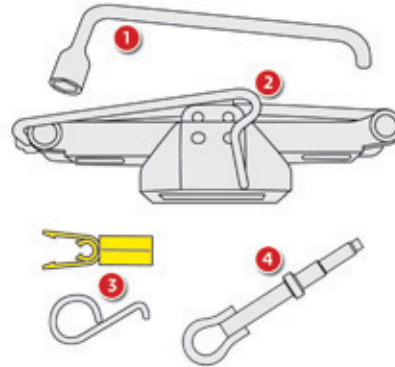
### Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the storage box containing the tools.



### List of tools

These tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment. Do not use them for any purpose other than those detailed below.

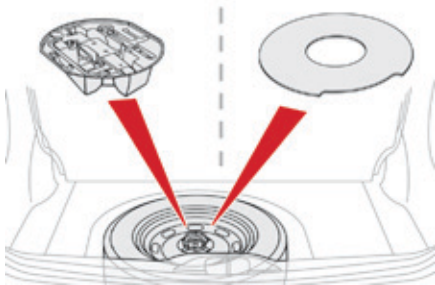
1. Wheelbrace.  
For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.  
For raising the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover removal tool.  
For removing the wheel bolt cover on alloy wheels or the central bolt cover (depending on version).
4. Removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged tyre. The jack does not require any maintenance.

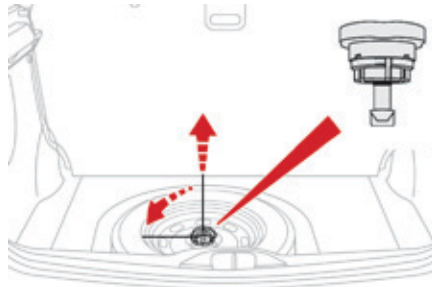
The jack conforms to European legislation, such as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

## Access to the spare wheel



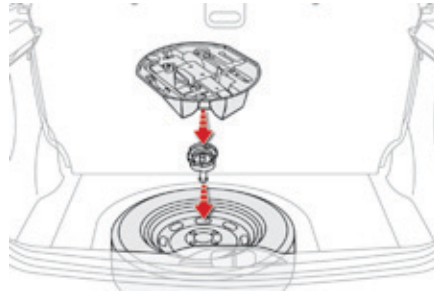
The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

Depending on engine, the spare wheel is a standard wheel or the space-saver type (BlueHDi).



## Taking out the wheel

- ☞ Unclip the tool storage box (standard spare wheel).
- ☞ Unscrew the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fixing parts (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.



### Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Unscrew the nut a few turns on the bolt.
- ☞ Position the fixing parts (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten the central nut until it clicks to retain the wheel correctly.

- ☞ Clip the tool storage box back into place (standard spare wheel).

**i** If there is no wheel in the well, the fixing parts (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

## Removing a wheel

### ! Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and not slippery.

Apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition and engage first gear\* to block the wheels.

Check that the parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on fixed.

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Ensure that the jack is correctly positioned at one of the vehicle's jacking points.

Incorrect use of the jack could cause the vehicle to drop.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

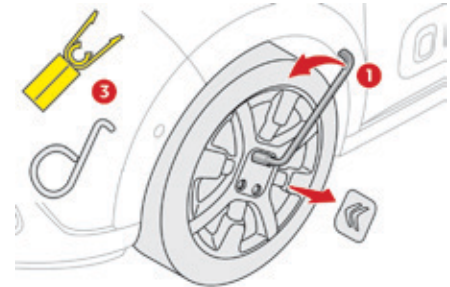
### i Wheel with wheel trim

**When removing the wheel**, first remove the wheel trim using the wheelbrace 1 by pulling at the valve aperture.

**When refitting the wheel**, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its cut-out in line with the valve and then pressing around its edge with the palm of your hand.

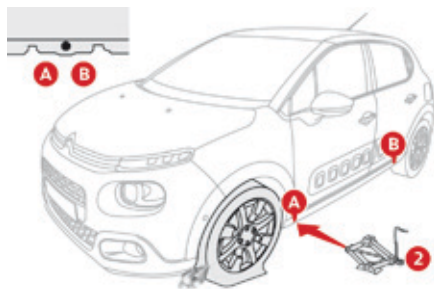
- i Do not use a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.

### List of operations

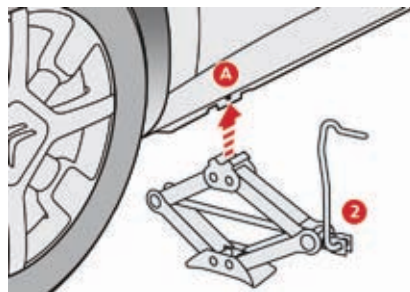


- ☞ Remove the wheel bolt cover(s) using the tool 3 (depending on version).
- ☞ Slacken the bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.

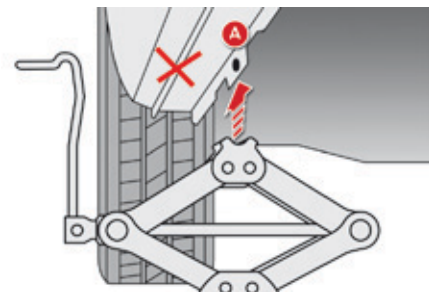
\* Position **P** for an automatic gearbox.



- ☞ Place the foot of the jack 2 on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

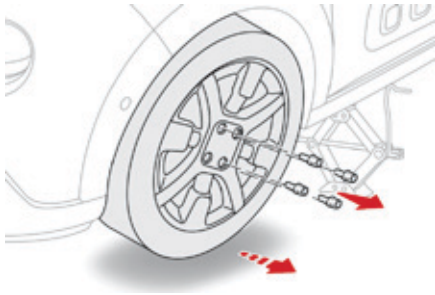


- ☞ Extend the jack 2 until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the vehicle's contact surface at **A** or **B** must engage with the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- !** Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack might slip or drop - Risk of injury!  
Take care to position the jack only at one of the vehicle's jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the contact surface of the vehicle's jacking point is centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or that the jack might drop - Risk of injury!





- 🔧 Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- 🔧 Remove the wheel.

### **i** Stowing the wheel with punctured tyre

The wheel with punctured tyre can be stowed under the floor, in the housing for the standard spare wheel.

To stow an alloy wheel, first remove the trim from the middle of the wheel so that the fixing parts (nut and bolt) can be put in place.

In the case of a "space-saver" type spare wheel, the wheel with punctured tyre cannot be stowed under the floor. It must be stowed in the boot; use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.

## Fitting a wheel



### **i** Fitting the spare wheel

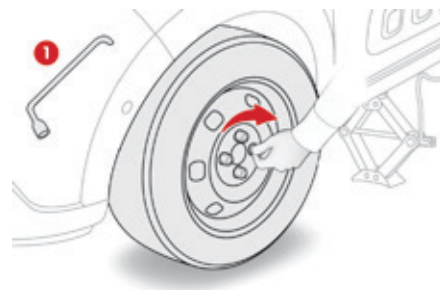
If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical surface of each bolt.

### **!** After changing a wheel

When using a "space-saver" type of spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

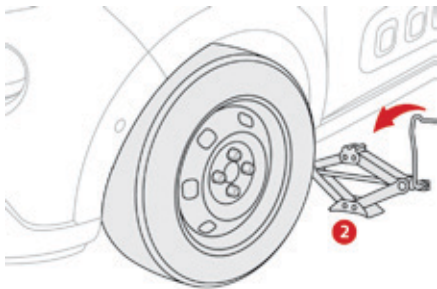
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and refitted to the vehicle as soon as possible.

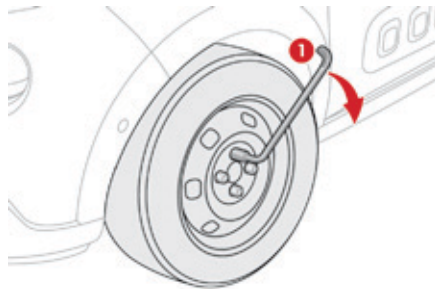


### List of operations

- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts fully by hand.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.



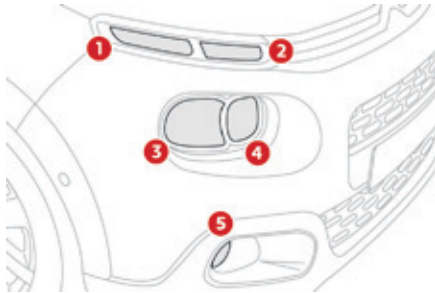
- ☞ Lower the vehicle fully.
- ☞ Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



- ☞ Tighten the bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- ☞ Refit the wheel bolt cover (alloy wheels).
- ☞ Stow the tools in their box.

# Changing a bulb

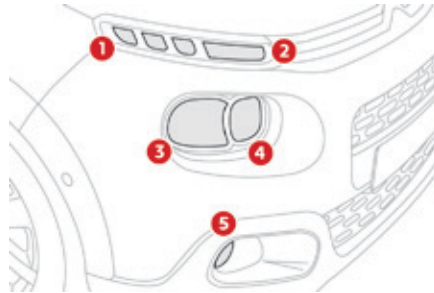
## Front lamps



### Model with halogen lamps

1. Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps (W21/5W).
2. Direction indicators (PY21W).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
4. Main beam headlamps (H7).
5. Front foglamps (PSX24W).

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.



### Model with LED lamps

1. Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps (LEDs)\*.
2. Direction indicators (PY21W).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
4. Main beam headlamps (H7).
5. Front foglamps (PSX24W).

\* LEDs: light-emitting diodes.

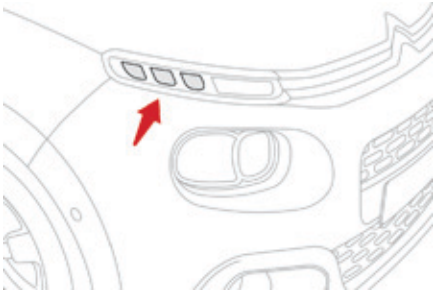
- !** The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
  - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
  - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

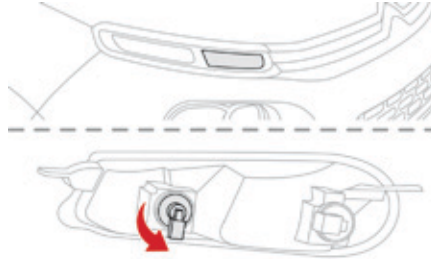


### Daytime running lamps / sidelamps

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anticlockwise and pull it out.
  - ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.
- To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

### Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



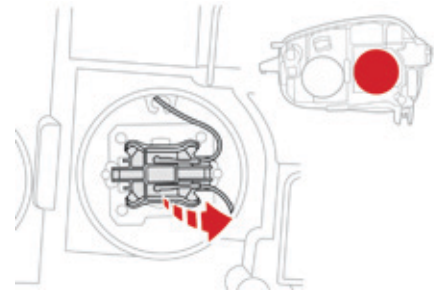
### Direction indicators

**i** Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and extract it.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

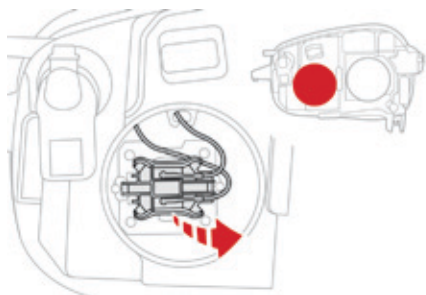
Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.



### Dipped beam headlamps

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

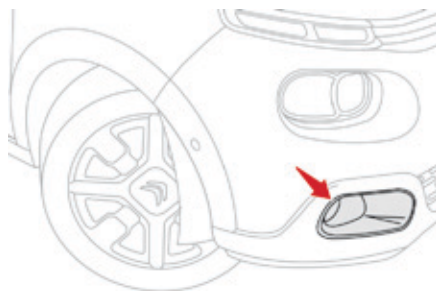
To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order, **directing the bulb alignment lug upwards.**



### Main beam headlamps

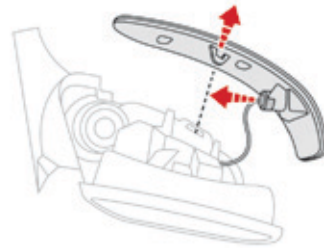
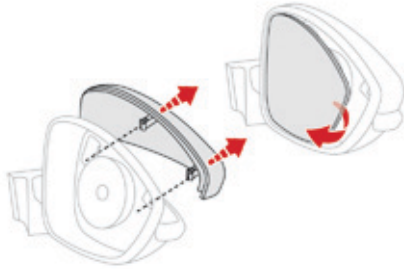
- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order, **directing the bulb positioning lug downwards.**



### Front foglamps

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.



### Integrated direction indicator side repeaters

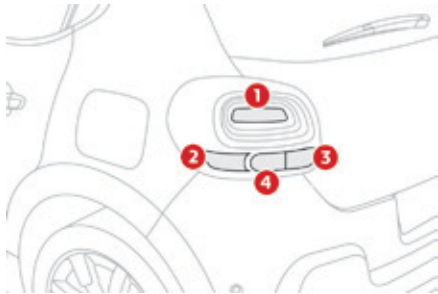
- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver between the mirror glass and its base.
- ☞ Use the screwdriver as a lever to extract the mirror glass.
- ☞ Unclip the mirror shell by pressing on the two retaining clips.

- ☞ Press the central tab and remove the side repeater.
- ☞ Pull the bulb holder out and replace the failed bulb.

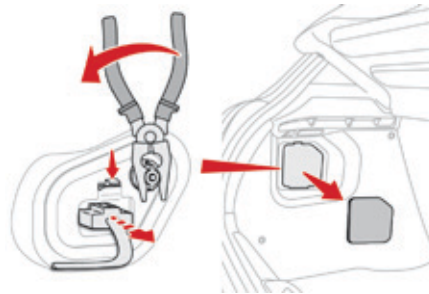
To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** You should contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

## Rear lamps



1. Sidelamps (R10W).
2. Brake lamps (P21W).
3. Direction indicators (PY21W).
4. Reversing lamp (P21W), right-hand side or Foglamp (PR21W), left-hand side.

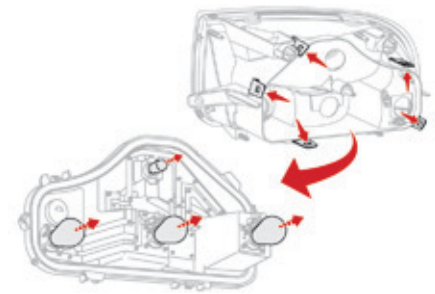


### Changing bulbs

These bulbs are changed from inside the boot.

- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Remove the access cover on the corresponding side trim.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp unit connector.
- ☞ Slacken and remove the nut (**take care not to drop it inside the wing**).
- ☞ Unclip the lamp unit and carefully remove it by pulling it horizontally towards the outside.

It may be necessary to use slip joint pliers or the wheelbrace (depending on equipment) to remove the nut.

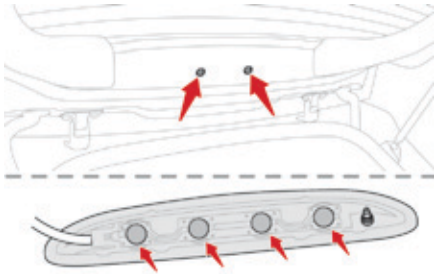


- ☞ Spread the bulb holder retaining tabs and remove the bulb holder.
- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter turn and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle. Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the lamp.





### Third brake lamp (4 T10 W5W bulbs)

- ☞ With the boot open, unclip the plastic covers.
- ☞ Push on the two lugs using a screwdriver.
- ☞ Remove the lamp via the exterior of the tailgate.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb-holder corresponding to the failed bulb a quarter of a turn and remove it.
- ☞ Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order, checking that the screen wash nozzle is on the left-hand side.



### Number plate lamps (W5W)

To facilitate the removal of the lamp, carry out this operation with the tailgate half open.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the lens cut-out.
- ☞ Lift it to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

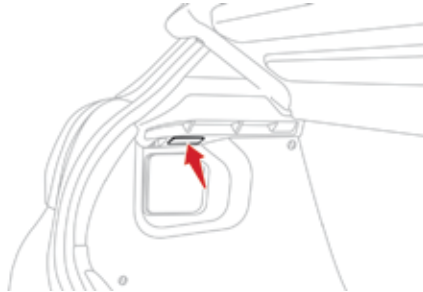
To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

## Interior lighting



### Courtesy lamp (W5W)

- ☞ Using a small flat blade screwdriver, unclip the console assembly surrounding the courtesy lamp.
- ☞ Remove the failed bulb and change it.
- ☞ Refit the console around the courtesy lamp, ensuring that it is clipped in correctly.



### Boot (W5W)

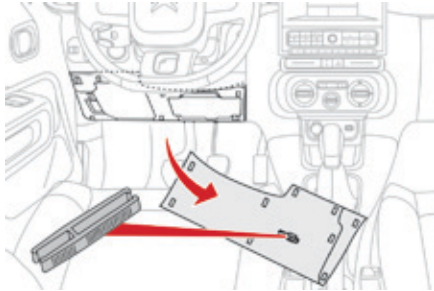
- ☞ Unclip the lamp by pushing the body from behind.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change.
- ☞ Refit the lamp.

### Courtesy lamp with LEDs

For the replacement of the light-emitting diodes (LEDs), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Changing a fuse

## Access to the tools



The extraction tweezer is fitted to the back of the cover of the dashboard fuseboxes.

- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over,
- ☞ Remove the tweezer from the back of the cover.

## Changing a fuse

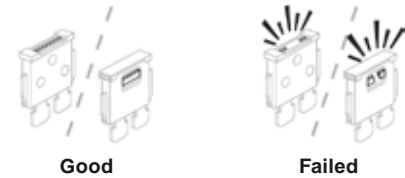
Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the tables and layout drawings in the following pages.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**Tweezer**

**!** The replacement of a fuse not shown in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

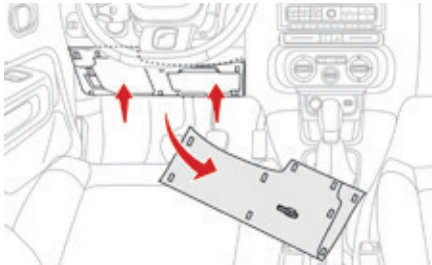
### **i** Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

## Dashboard fuses



The 2 fuseboxes are placed in the lower dashboard, below the steering wheel.

## Access to the fuses

☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at top left, then right.



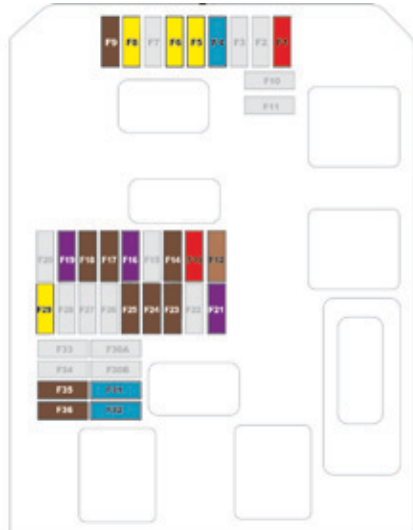
## Upper fusebox

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F29	-	Not used.
F30	30	Heated rear screen.
F31	10	Heated mirrors.
F32	-	Not used.
F33	40	Front electric windows.
F34	40	Rear electric windows.
F35	30	Heated front seats.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.



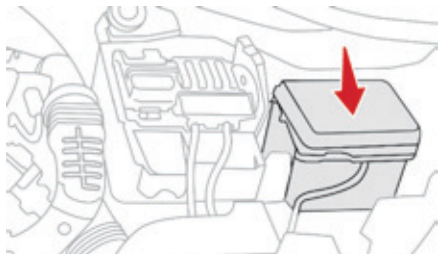
## Lower fusebox

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	10	Electrochromatic interior mirror, heated rear screen, particle filter pump (Diesel), parking sensors, power steering, LPG system, clutch pedal switch, exterior mirror adjustment.
F10(+) F11(Gnd)	30	Locking / unlocking of the doors and fuel filler flap (depending on engine).
F13	10	Rain and sunshine sensor, air conditioning, front camera.
F14	5	Alarm, telematic unit.
F16	3	Automatic gearbox gear selector, brake pedal switch, Stop & Start system.
F17	5	Instrument panel, driving school module.
F18	5	Air conditioning, gear selector position indicator (automatic gearbox).
F19	3	Steering mounted controls.
F21	3	START/STOP switch or button.
F23	5	Seat belts not fastened warning lamps display.



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F24	5	Parking sensors, rear camera, telematic screen.
F25	5	Airbags control unit.
F29	20	Audio-telematic system.
F31	15	Audio system (accessory).
F32	15	Front 12 V socket.
F35	5	Headlamp height adjustment, diagnostic socket, additional heating (depending on equipment).
F36	5	Front map reading lamp.
F4	15	Horn.
F6(+) F5(Gnd)	20	Front and rear screen wash pump.
F8	20	Rear wiper.
F9	5	Front courtesy lamp.

## Engine compartment fuses



The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

### Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	40	Air conditioning.
F10	15	Engine management.
F11	20	Engine management.
F12	5	Engine management.
F13	5	Engine management.
F14	5	Battery charge status unit (depending on engine).
F15	5	Not used.
F16	20	Front foglamp.
F17	5	Engine management.
F18	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F2	60	ABS/ESP.
F20	30	Engine management.
F21	30	Starter motor (depending on engine).
F22	30	Not used.
F23	40	Starter unit (with Stop & Start and depending on engine).
F24	40	Passenger compartment fusebox.





Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F25	40	Towbar pre-equipment.
F26	15	Automatic gearbox or LPG system.
F27	25	Built-in systems interface (BSI).
F28	30	Diesel emissions control system (AdBlue®).
F29	40	Windscreen wipers.
F3	50	Passenger compartment fusebox.
F30	40	Diesel pre-heating unit.
F31	80	Additional heating (depending on equipment).
F32	80	Power steering.
F4	30	ABS/ESP.
F5	70	Built-in systems interface (BSI).
F6	60	Cooling fan assembly.
F7	80	Built-in systems interface (BSI).
F8	15	Engine management.
F9	15	Engine management.

## 12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

### General points

#### Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

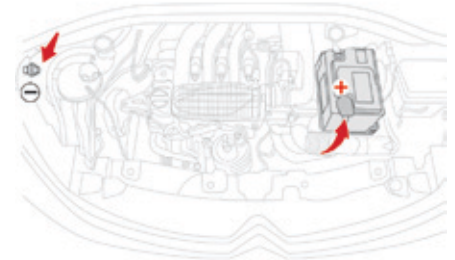


If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

### Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior catch,
- ☞ raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay.

**(+)** Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

**(-)** Negative terminal.

As the battery negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is located on the structure of the front right wing.

## Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables or a battery booster.

**!** Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger. Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

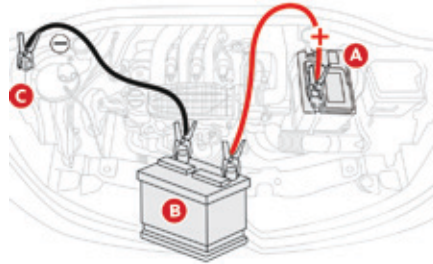
First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...).

Ensure that the jump lead cables do not pass close to moving parts of the engine (cooling fan, belts, ...).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- ☞ Raise the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** or the booster (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.

- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run. If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

**i** Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

## Charging the battery using a battery charger

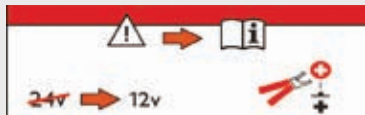
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you use your vehicle essentially for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** If you envisage charging your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

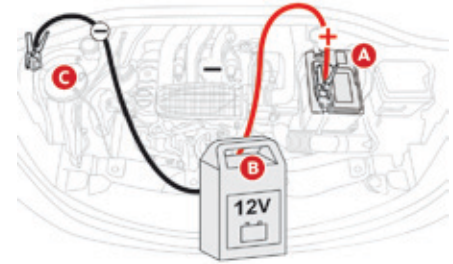


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger, to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

**!** Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

**i** It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, ...).
- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



**!** Never try to charge a frozen battery. If the battery has been frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

## Disconnecting the battery

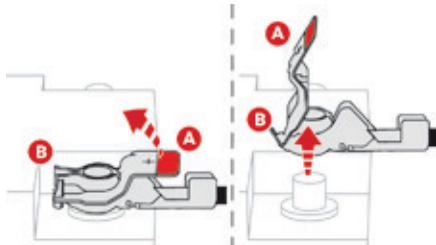
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, boot, windows),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

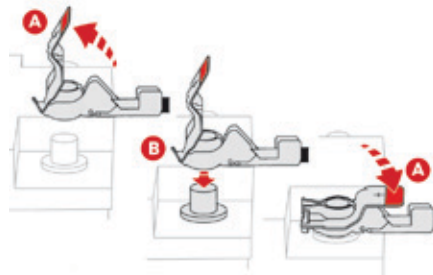
At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

### Quick-release terminal clamp



#### Disconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.



#### Reconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.



Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

## Following reconnection of the battery

After reconnecting the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to allow initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself initialise or reset certain systems, such as:

- the remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.



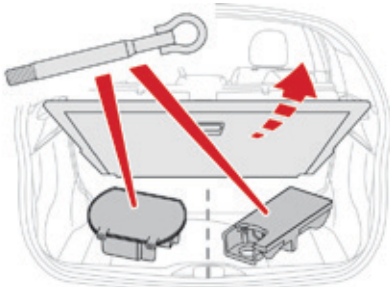
The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.

In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

# Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

## Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from its housing.

## ! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,

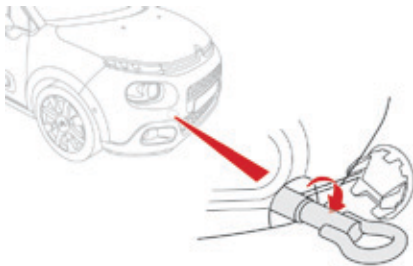
- four-wheel drive vehicle,

- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,

- towing with only two wheels on the ground,

- where there is no approved towing arm available...

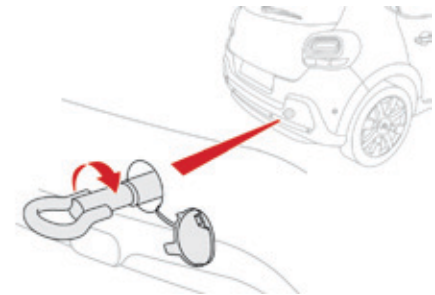
## Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing on the left.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** with an automatic gearbox).

- ☞ Unlock the steering by turning the key in the ignition one notch and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

## Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

**!** Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

## Engines

### Engine characteristics

The engine characteristics (capacity, maximum power, maximum engine speed, fuel, CO<sub>2</sub> emissions, etc.) for your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These characteristics correspond to the values type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Weights

### Weights and towed loads

The maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also present on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1 000 metres.

The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount.

The recommended nose weight is the vertical load on the towbar ball (removable with or without tools).

**GVW:** gross vehicle weight, the maximum authorised vehicle weight.

**GTW:** gross train weight, the maximum authorised weight of vehicle plus trailer.

**!** High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; when the exterior temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the towed weight.

**!** Towing with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. Never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

**i** If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.



## Engines and towed loads - PETROL

Engine	PureTech 70 manual	PureTech 82 manual	PureTech 110 S&S		VTI 115 EAT6
Gearbox	5-speed manual (BVM5)	5-speed manual (BVM5)	5-speed manual (BVM5)	6-speed automatic (EAT6)	6-speed automatic (EAT6)
Code	EB2FB - MA	EB2F - MA	EB2DT - BM - STTd	EB2DT - AT6III - STTd	EC5F - AT6III
Model code Wheel 640 = /A... Wheel 620 = /B...	SXHMP6/B0 - SXHMP6/A0	SXHMZ6/... B0 - B1 - A0 - B0M - A0M	SXHNZ6/A0S	SXHNZT/A0S	SXNFPT/A0
Capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1 199	1 199	1 199	1 199	1 587
Maximum power: EU standard (kW)*	50	60	81	81	85
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% gradient (kg)	450	450	600	450	450
Unbraked trailer (kg)	450	450	450	450	450
Recommended nose weight (kg)	26	26	32	32	32

\* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

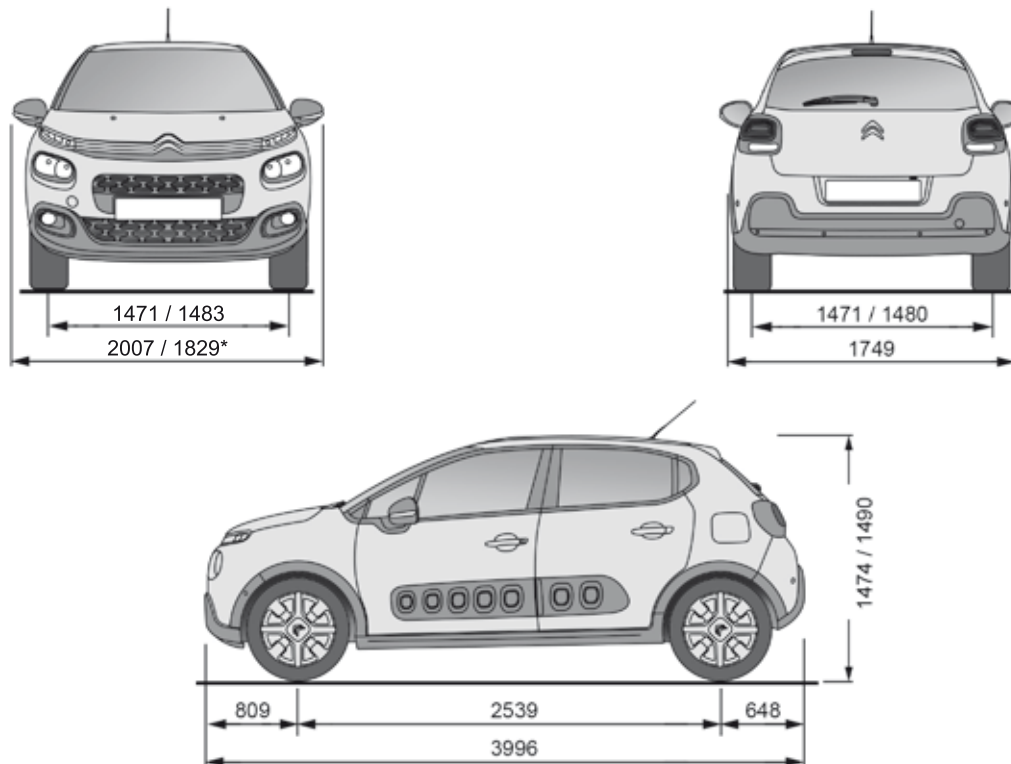
## Engines and towed loads - DIESEL

Engine	BlueHDi 75 S&S manual	HDi 90	BlueHDi 100 S&S manual
Gearbox	5-speed manual (BVM5)	5-speed manual (BVM5)	5-speed manual (BVM5)
Code	DV6FE - BE - STTd	DV6DM - BE	DV6FD - BE - STTd
Model code Wheel 640 = /A... Wheel 620 = /B...	SXBHW6/... B0S - B1S - A0S	SX9HJC/B0 - SX9HJC/A0	SXBHY6/B0S - SXBHY6/A0S
Capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1 560	1 560	1 560
Maximum power: EU standard (kW)*	55	66	73
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 or 12% gradient (kg)	600	600	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	450	450	450
Recommended nose weight (kg)	32	32	32

\* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

## Dimensions (in mm)

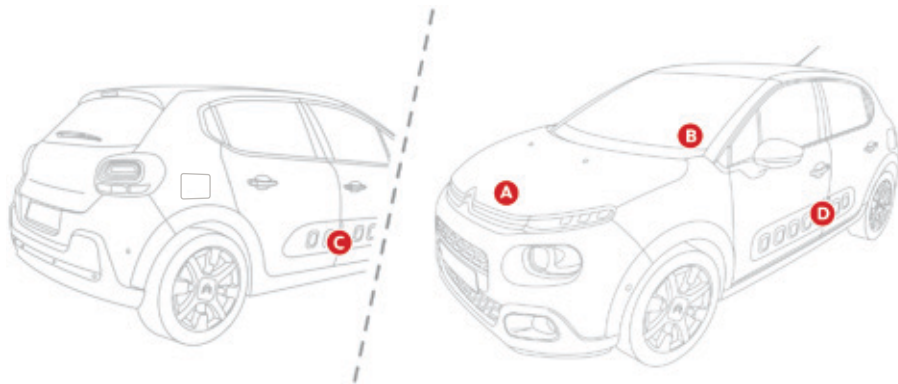
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



\* Mirrors folded.

## Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



### A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.

The number is engraved on the body structure.

### B. Vehicle identification number (VIN), on the dashboard.

The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

### C. Manufacturer's label.

This self-destructing label is affixed to the right-hand door aperture.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),

- the maximum authorised vehicle weight (the Gross Vehicle Weight or GVW),
- the maximum authorised vehicle + trailer weight (the Gross Train Weight or GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

### D. Tyres / paint code label.

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information on the tyres:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the reference, size, type, load index and speed rating,

- the spare tyre pressure.
- It also indicates the paint colour code.

**i** The original tyres fitted to the vehicle may have a load index or speed rating higher than those given on the label; this has no effect on the inflation pressures.

### Checking tyre pressures

The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.

The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm; in this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

**!** Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.



Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.



## A

Accessories .....	117, 157
AdBlue® .....	26, 36, 215, 216
Adjusting headlamps .....	112
Adjusting head restraints .....	77
Adjusting seat .....	76
Adjusting the air distribution .....	85, 88
Adjusting the air flow .....	85, 88
Adjusting the date .....	41, 54
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel .....	82
Adjusting the temperature .....	85, 88
Adjusting the time .....	41, 54, 55
Advice on driving .....	151, 152
Airbags .....	29, 129, 137
Airbags, curtain .....	132, 133
Airbags, front .....	130, 133
Airbags, lateral .....	131, 133
AIRBUMP® .....	219
Air conditioning .....	9, 87
Air conditioning, automatic .....	84, 88
Air conditioning, manual .....	84, 86
Air intake .....	86, 88
Air vents .....	83
Alarm .....	72
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) .....	123
Anti-slip regulation (ASR) .....	123
Anti-theft .....	153
Armrest, front .....	96, 98
Assistance call .....	119, 121
Assistance, emergency braking .....	123
Audio system .....	41
Auxiliary socket .....	98

## B

Battery .....	203, 213, 248-251
Battery, charging .....	250
Battery, remote control .....	63, 66
Blanking screen (snow shield) .....	201
Blind, panoramic roof .....	95
Blind spot monitoring system .....	184
Blind spot sensors .....	18, 184
BlueHDI .....	32, 36, 215, 220
Bonnet .....	206
Boot .....	69, 95, 100
Brake discs .....	214
Brake lamps .....	238
Brakes .....	22, 214
Bulbs (changing) .....	234, 238

## C

Capacity, fuel tank .....	196
Cap, fuel filler .....	196
Central locking .....	60, 61, 70
Changing a bulb .....	234, 238, 240
Changing a fuse .....	241, 243, 246
Changing a wheel .....	226, 227
Changing a wiper blade .....	116, 204
Changing the remote control battery .....	66
Checking the engine oil level .....	35
Checking the levels .....	209-212
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) .....	221
Checks .....	207, 208, 213, 214
Child lock .....	150
Children .....	141, 143-145, 147
Children (safety) .....	150
Child seats .....	128, 134-136, 140, 141, 149
Child seats, conventional .....	140, 141
Child seats, i-Size .....	147

Child seats, ISOFIX .....	143-145, 147
CITROËN Connect Box .....	119, 121
CITROËN Localised Emergency Call... ..	119, 121
Closing the boot .....	57, 69
Closing the doors .....	57, 60, 61, 68
Coat hanger .....	99
Configuration, vehicle .....	41, 44, 46
ConnectedCAM CITROËN™ .....	193
Control, electric windows .....	74
Control, emergency boot release .....	69
Control, emergency door .....	64
Control, heated seats .....	78
Control stalk, lighting .....	16, 105, 106, 110
Control stalk, wipers .....	113-115
Courtesy lamp .....	94, 240
Cruise control .....	170, 173, 178
Cruise control by speed limit recognition .....	173
Cup holder .....	96

## D

Date (setting) .....	41, 54
Daytime running lamps .....	106, 110, 234, 235
Deactivating the passenger airbag .....	130, 137
Deadlocking .....	57, 62
Demisting - defrosting .....	92, 93
Dimensions .....	257
Dipstick .....	35, 209
Direction indicators .....	108, 110, 234, 235, 238
Display screen, instrument panel .....	165
Doors .....	68
Driving economically .....	9
Driving time warning .....	182
Dynamic stability control (DSC) .....	22, 123, 125

**E**

Earth point, remote ..... 207, 208  
 Eco-driving (advice) ..... 9  
 Economy mode ..... 203  
 Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) ... 123  
 Emergency braking assistance (EBA) ..... 123  
 Emergency call ..... 119, 121  
 Emergency switching off ..... 158  
 Emergency warning lamps ..... 118, 220  
 Emissions control system, SCR ..... 27  
 Energy economy mode ..... 203  
 Engine compartment ..... 207, 208  
 Engine, Diesel ..... 199, 208, 220  
 Engine, petrol ..... 199, 207  
 Engines ..... 254-256  
 Environment ..... 9, 63  
 Electronic stability control (ESC) ..... 123

**F**

Fatigue detection ..... 182  
 Filling the fuel tank ..... 196, 198, 199  
 Filter, air ..... 213  
 Filter, Diesel fuel ..... 208  
 Filter, oil ..... 213  
 Filter, particle ..... 212, 213  
 Filter, passenger compartment ..... 213  
 Fitting a wheel ..... 229  
 Fitting roof bars ..... 205  
 Fittings, boot ..... 100, 102  
 Fittings, interior ..... 96, 97  
 Flap, fuel filler ..... 196, 198  
 Flashing indicators ..... 108, 110, 235  
 Foglamps, rear ..... 107, 238  
 Foglamps, front ..... 107, 234, 236

Folding the rear seats ..... 79  
 Fuel ..... 9, 199  
 Fuel consumption ..... 9  
 Fuel tank ..... 198  
 Fusebox, engine compartment ..... 246  
 Fuses ..... 241, 243, 246

**G**

Gauge, fuel ..... 196  
 Gearbox, automatic ... 9, 161, 166, 167, 214, 248  
 Gearbox, manual ..... 9, 96, 160, 166, 167, 214  
 Gear efficiency indicator ..... 165  
 Gear lever ..... 9  
 Gear lever, manual gearbox ..... 160  
 Glove box ..... 96, 97

**H**

Hazard warning lamps ..... 118, 220  
 Headlamps, automatic illumination ..... 106, 109, 111  
 Headlamps, dipped beam ..... 105, 234, 235  
 Headlamps, main beam ..... 105, 234, 236  
 Head restraints, front ..... 77  
 Head restraints, rear ..... 79  
 Heating ..... 9, 85, 86  
 Hill start assist ..... 166  
 Hooks ..... 101  
 Horn ..... 118

**I**

Ignition ..... 91, 155, 157  
 Immobiliser, electronic ..... 63, 153  
 Indicator, AdBlue® range ..... 26, 36  
 Indicator, coolant temperature ..... 31  
 Indicator, engine oil level ..... 35  
 Indicator lamps, operation ..... 16, 19  
 Indicators, direction ..... 108, 235  
 Inflating tyres ..... 9, 221, 258  
 Instrument panel ..... 11, 13  
 ISOFIX ..... 143, 144

**J**

Jack ..... 226, 227  
 Jump starting ..... 249

**K**

Key ..... 56, 59, 61, 63, 64  
 Key, electronic ..... 59-61  
 Keyless Entry and Starting ..... 59, 61, 63, 153, 156  
 Key not recognised ..... 158  
 Key with remote control ..... 153  
 Kit, temporary puncture repair ..... 101, 221

## L

Labels, identification.....	258
Lamp, boot.....	95, 240
Lamps, parking.....	110
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) ...	183
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes.....	110
Level, AdBlue.....	212
Level, brake fluid.....	210
Level, Diesel additive.....	212
Level, engine coolant.....	31, 211
Level, engine oil.....	35, 209
Levels and checks.....	207-212
Level, screenwash fluid.....	211
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs.....	110, 240
Lighting.....	16
Lighting, guide-me home.....	111
Lighting, interior.....	94
Lighting, welcome.....	111
Loading.....	9
Load reduction mode.....	203
Localised Assistance Call.....	119, 121
Locating your vehicle.....	58
Locking.....	57, 63
Locking from the inside.....	70
Low fuel level.....	196

## M

Maintenance (advice).....	219
Maintenance, routine.....	9
Map reading lamps.....	94
Markings, identification.....	258
Mat.....	96, 99
Memorising a speed.....	170
Mirror, rear view.....	104
Mirrors, door.....	103, 184
Misfuel prevention.....	198
Mountings, Isofix.....	143

## N

Number plate lamps.....	239
-------------------------	-----

## O

Oil change.....	209
Oil consumption.....	209
Oil, engine.....	209
Opening the bonnet.....	206
Opening the boot.....	57, 59, 69
Opening the doors.....	57, 59, 68

## P

Pads, brake.....	214
Paint colour code.....	258
Panoramic glass sunroof.....	95
Parcel shelf, rear.....	101, 102
Parking brake.....	17, 159, 214
Parking sensors, rear.....	187
Plates, identification.....	258
Port, USB.....	96, 98
Pre-heater, Diesel.....	17
Pressures, tyres.....	225, 258
Pre-tensioning seat belts.....	128
Priming the fuel system.....	220
Protecting children.....	130, 134-136, 141, 143-145, 147
Protectors.....	219
Puncture.....	221

## R

Range, AdBlue.....	26, 36
Rear screen, demisting.....	93
Recharging the battery.....	250
Recirculation, air.....	86, 88
Reduction of electrical load.....	203
Regeneration of the particle filter.....	213
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.....	191, 192
Reinitialising the remote control.....	67
Reminder, key in ignition.....	155
Reminder, lighting on.....	108
Remote control.....	56, 57, 59-61, 63
Removing a wheel.....	229



Removing the mat ..... 99  
 Replacing bulbs ..... 234, 238  
 Replacing fuses ..... 241, 243  
 Replacing the air filter ..... 213  
 Replacing the oil filter ..... 213  
 Replacing the passenger  
 compartment filter ..... 213  
 Reservoir, screenwash ..... 211  
 Resetting the service indicator ..... 34  
 Resetting the trip recorder ..... 39  
 Reversing camera ..... 189  
 Reversing lamp ..... 238  
 Roof bars ..... 205  
 Running out of fuel (Diesel) ..... 220

Settings, equipment ..... 40, 41, 44, 46  
 Sidelamps ..... 105, 110, 234, 235, 238  
 Side repeater ..... 237  
 Snow chains ..... 190, 200  
 Socket, 12 V accessory ..... 96, 97  
 Socket, auxiliary ..... 98  
 Sockets, audio ..... 98  
 Speed limiter ..... 170, 173, 175  
 Speed limit recognition ..... 171  
 Stability control (ESC) ..... 123  
 Starting the engine ..... 153, 156, 161  
 Starting using another battery ..... 158, 249  
 Stay, bonnet ..... 206  
 Steering wheel, adjustment ..... 82  
 Stop ..... 20  
 Stopping the vehicle ..... 153, 156, 161  
 Stop & Start ..... 18, 52, 84, 92, 167,  
 196, 206, 213, 251  
 Stop (warning lamp) ..... 20  
 Storage ..... 97  
 Sun visor ..... 96, 97  
 Switching off the engine ..... 153  
 Synchronising the remote control ..... 67

## S

Safety, children ..... 130, 134-136,  
 141, 143-145, 147  
 Screen, cold climate ..... 201  
 Screen, monochrome ..... 41  
 Screenwash, front ..... 114  
 Screenwash, rear ..... 114  
 SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction)  
 system ..... 27, 215  
 Seat belts ..... 126-128, 140  
 Seats, front ..... 76  
 Seats, heated ..... 78  
 Seats, rear ..... 79  
 Selector, gear ..... 161  
 Serial number, vehicle ..... 258  
 Service indicator ..... 32, 34  
 Servicing ..... 9

Tools ..... 226, 227  
 Total distance recorder ..... 39  
 Touch screen ..... 44, 46  
 Towbar ..... 152, 202  
 Towing another vehicle ..... 252  
 Towing eye ..... 101  
 Traction control (ASR) ..... 22, 123, 125  
 Trailer ..... 152, 202  
 Triangle, warning ..... 101, 220  
 Trip computer ..... 50-52  
 Trip distance recorder ..... 39  
 Tyres ..... 9, 258  
 Tyre under-inflation  
 detection ..... 30, 190, 192, 225

## U

Under floor storage ..... 101  
 Under-inflation (detection) ..... 190  
 Unlocking ..... 57, 59  
 Unlocking from the inside ..... 70  
 Updating the date ..... 54  
 Updating the time ..... 54, 55

## T

Tables of fuses ..... 241, 243, 246  
 Tank, fuel ..... 196, 198  
 Temperature, coolant ..... 31  
 Third brake lamp ..... 239  
 Three flashes (direction indicators) ..... 108  
 Time (setting) ..... 41, 54, 55

---

## V

Ventilation ..... 9, 83, 84, 86

---

## W

Warning and indicator lamps ..... 15, 16, 19, 20  
Warning lamp, braking system .....22  
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater ..... 17  
Warning lamp, driver's seat belt not  
fastened ..... 127  
Warning lamp, low fuel level .....28  
Warning lamps .....20  
Warning lamp, seat belts ..... 127  
Warning lamp, Service.....21  
Warning lamp, Stop .....20  
Weights ..... 254-256  
Wheel, spare .....226, 227, 258  
Window controls ..... 74  
Wiper blades (changing) ..... 116, 204  
Wiper, rear..... 114  
Wipers ..... 113, 115  
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive..... 113, 115









---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

Printed in the EU  
Anglais

06-16

Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France

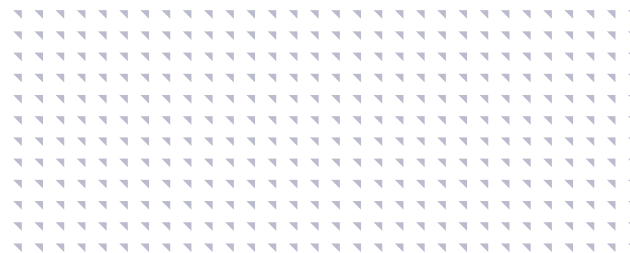
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - [www.citroen.com](http://www.citroen.com)

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z









# AUDIO AND TELEMATICS GUIDE

# On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Find your handbook and the audio and telematic systems on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

---

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- > the language,
- > the vehicle, its body style,
- > the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

---

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



# CITROËN Connect Nav

## GPS satellite navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



	Contents
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	5
Menus	6
Voice commands	8
Navigation	14
Connected navigation	30
Applications	40
Radio Media	54
Telephone	66
Settings	78
Frequently asked questions	88

**i** The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. Displaying of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss>

# First steps



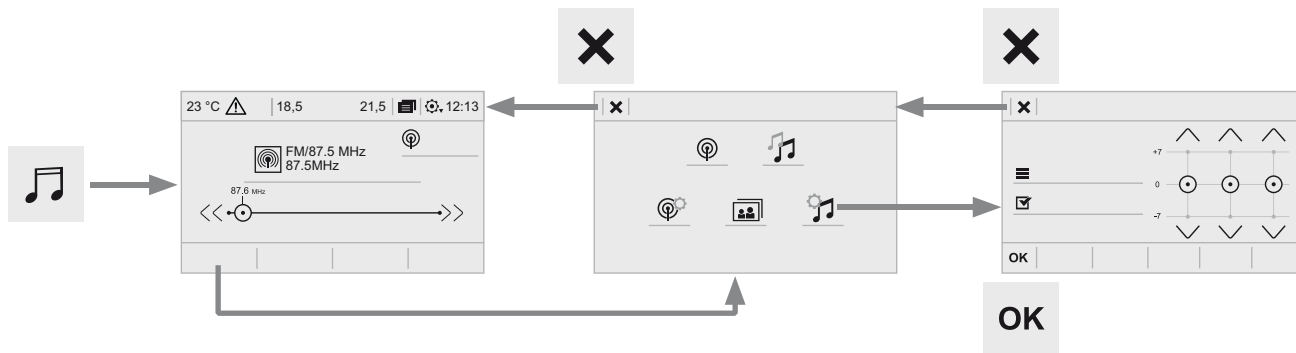
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.  
 With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the cross to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.

**!** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.  
 To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.  
 Do not use sharp objects on the screen.  
 Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



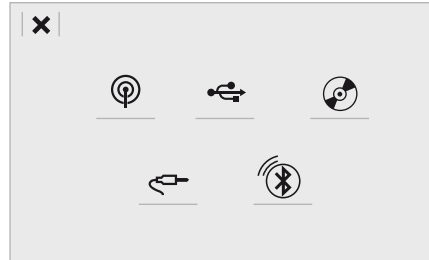
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Select the audio source (depending on version):

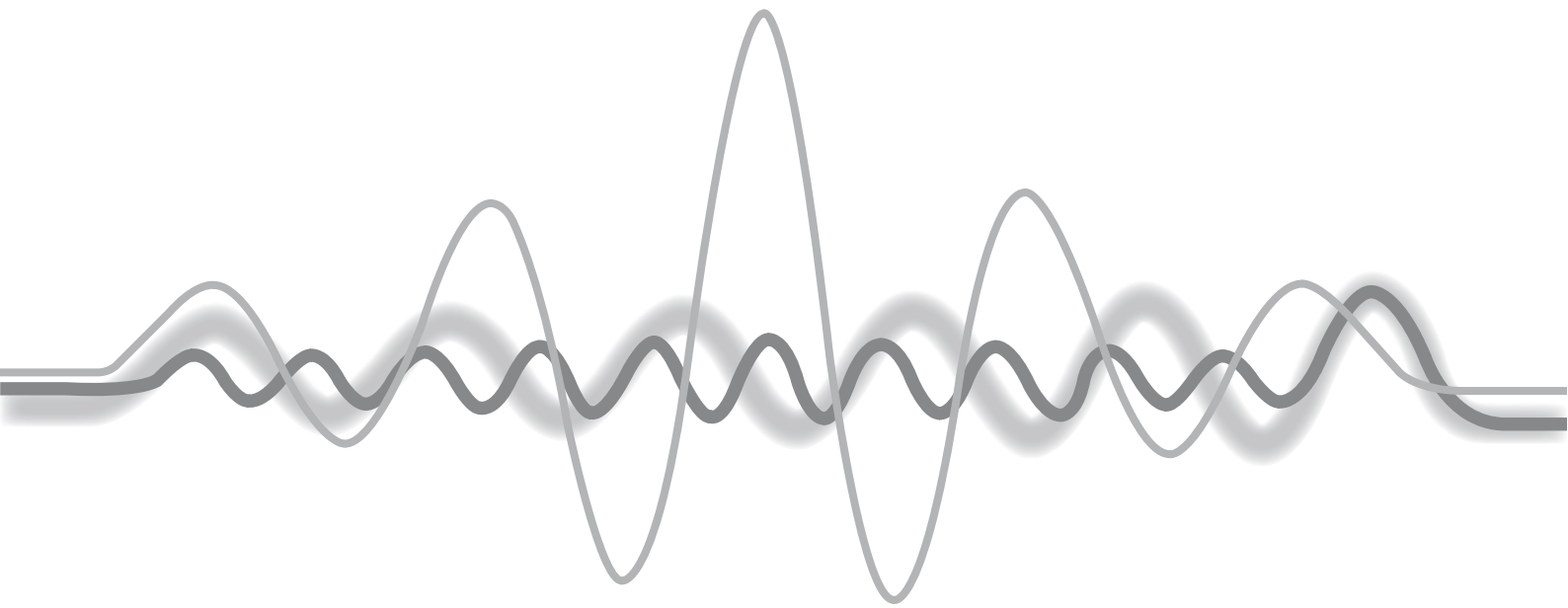
- FM / DAB\* / AM\* radio stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth\* using Bluetooth\* audio streaming.



**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.

**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

\* Depending on equipment.



# Steering mounted controls



## Voice commands:

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.

**SRC**



**Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

**Telephone** (short press): call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access to telephone menu.

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.

**Short press**: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.

**LIST**

**Radio**: display the list of stations.

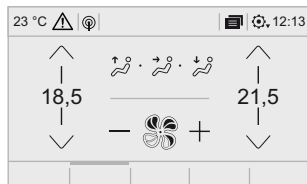
**Media**: display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

# Menus

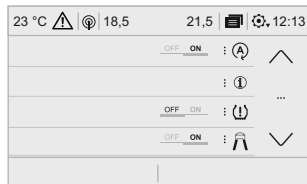
According to version

## Air conditioning



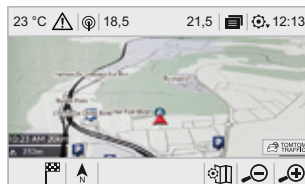
Manage the various temperature and air flow settings.

## Driving



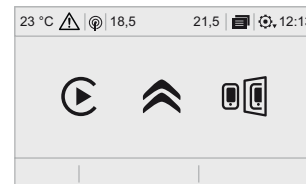
Activate, deactivate and configure certain vehicle functions.

## Connected navigation



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination. Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

## Applications

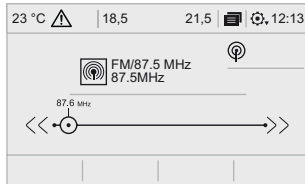


Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or MirrorLink™. Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.





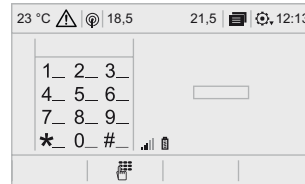
## Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



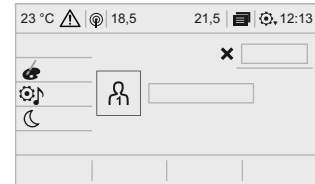
## Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.



## Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

# Voice commands

## Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

- !** To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
  - always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
  - for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and opening roof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (according to version).
  - before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

## First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

**"Navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London".**

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

**"Play artist Madonna".**

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

**"Call David Miller".**

- !** The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.

Alternative synonyms can be used for some voice commands.

E.g. Guide to / Navigate to / Go to /...

The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

## Information - Using the system





Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any

time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.



## Global voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 <b>"Voice command"</b>	 <b>Help message</b>
<b>Help</b>	<p>There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".</p>
<b>Voice command help</b>	
<b>Navigation help</b>	
<b>Radio help</b>	
<b>Media help</b>	
<b>Telephone help</b>	
<b>Set dialogue mode as &lt;...&gt;</b>	Select "beginner" or "expert" mode.
<b>Select profile &lt;...&gt;</b>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
<b>Yes</b>	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
<b>No</b>	

## "Navigation" voice commands



**i** These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 <b>"Voice command"</b>	 <b>Help message</b>
<b>Navigate home</b>	
<b>Navigate to work</b>	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name.
<b>Navigate to preferred address &lt;...&gt;</b>	For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination.
<b>Navigate to contact &lt;...&gt;</b>	For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home".
<b>Navigate to address &lt;...&gt;</b>	To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station".
<b>Show nearby POI &lt;...&gt;</b>	For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
<b>Remaining distance</b>	
<b>Remaining time</b>	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time".
<b>Arrival time</b>	Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
<b>Stop route guidance</b>	

**i** Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

## "Radio Media" voice commands



**i** These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 <b>"Voice command"</b>	 <b>Help message</b>
<b>Tune to channel &lt;...&gt;</b>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
<b>What's playing</b>	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
<b>Play song &lt;...&gt;</b>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
<b>Play artist &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Play album &lt;...&gt;</b>	

**i** Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

## "Telephone" voice commands



- If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
- If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 <b>"Voice command"</b>	 <b>Help message</b>
<b>Call contact &lt;...&gt;*</b>	
<b>Dial &lt;...&gt;*</b>	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller".
<b>Display contacts*</b>	You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417".
<b>Display calls*</b>	You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls".
<b>Call (message box   voicemail)*</b>	For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

## "Test message" voice commands

- If a telephone is connected to the system these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.  
If no telephone has been connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

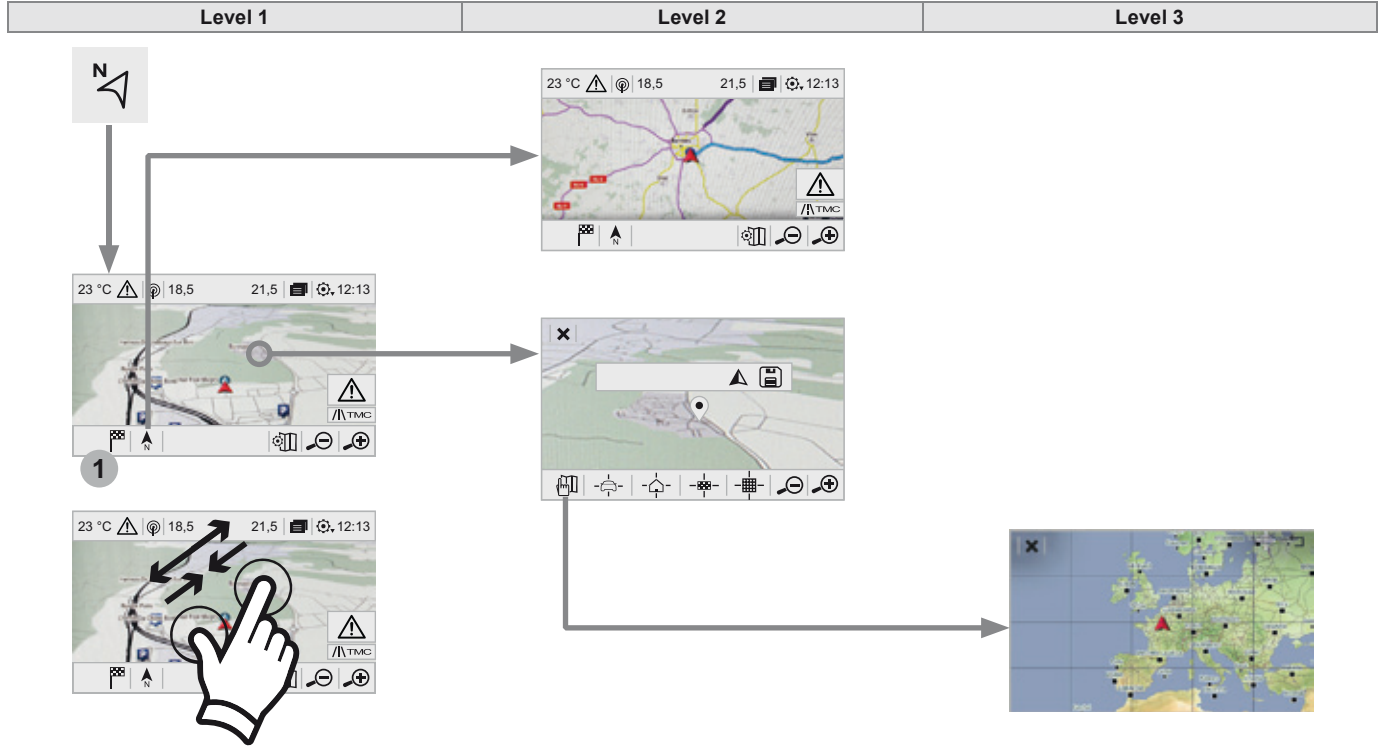
 <b>"Voice command"</b>	 <b>Help message</b>
<b>Send text to &lt;...&gt;</b>	<p>To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message".</p> <p>When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late".</p> <p>Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.</p>
<b>Listen to most recent message*</b>	<p>Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list.</p> <p>To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo".</p> <p>To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".</p>

- The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".



















\* This function is only available if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

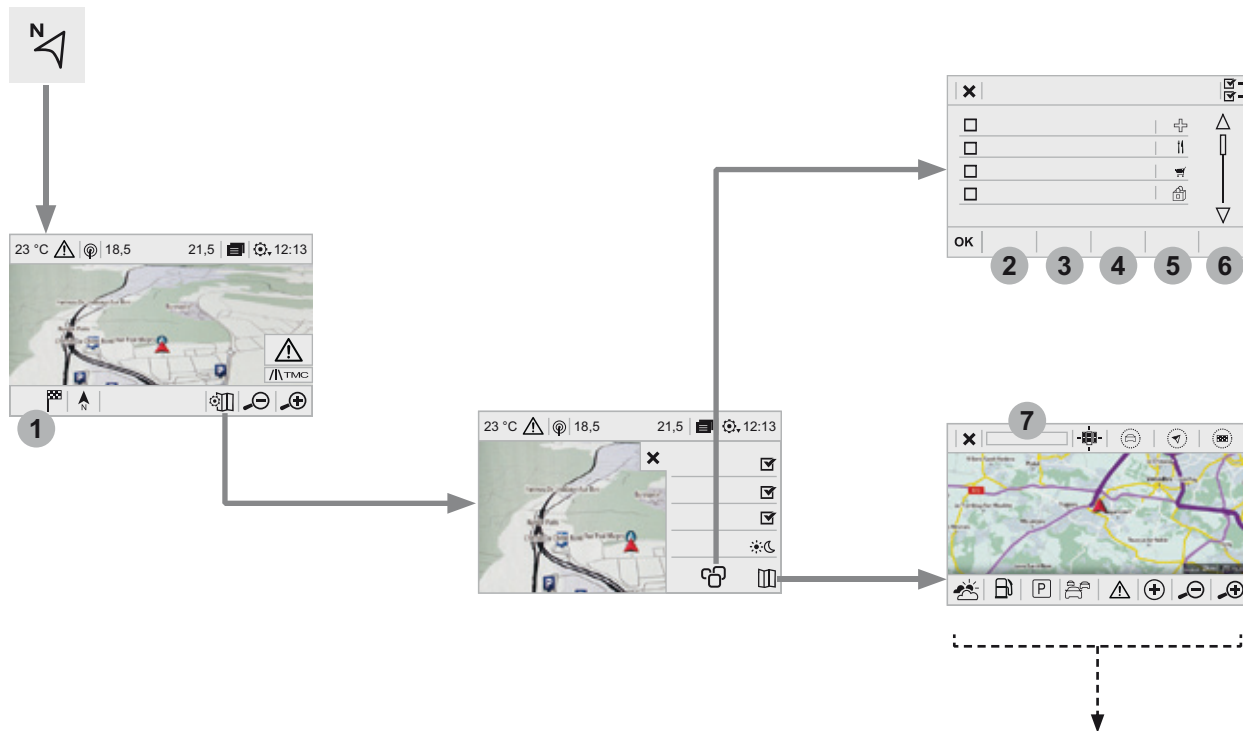
# Navigation






According to version

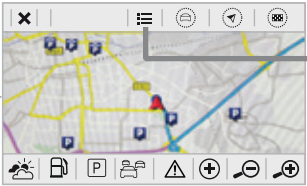
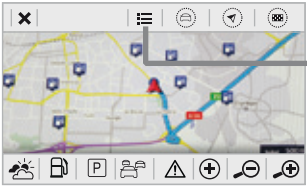
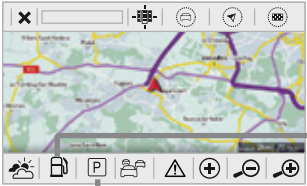
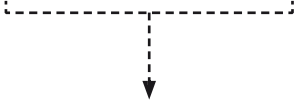

























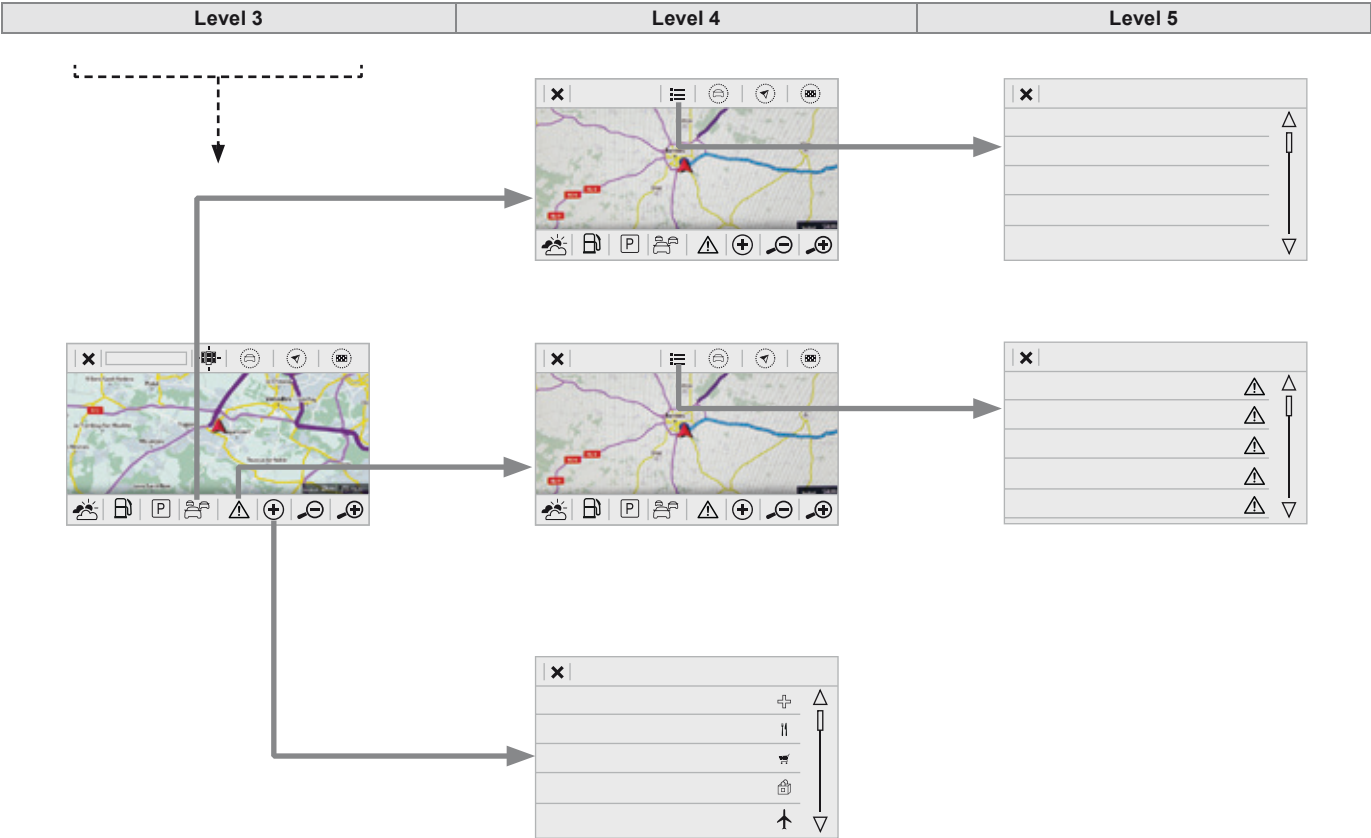
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments	
	<b>Navigation</b> ↓ 					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.	
	<b>Navigation</b> ↓ 					Display the traffic information available.	
	<b>Navigation</b>		World map			Manually locate an area on the world map or enter the latitude and longitude coordinates.	
							
			Around the vehicle				Display the location criteria selected.
			Around home				
			Around the destination				
			2D mode				Switch to a 2D map.
							Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.
							
							Start navigation to the current address.
					Save the current address.		
					Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.		
							








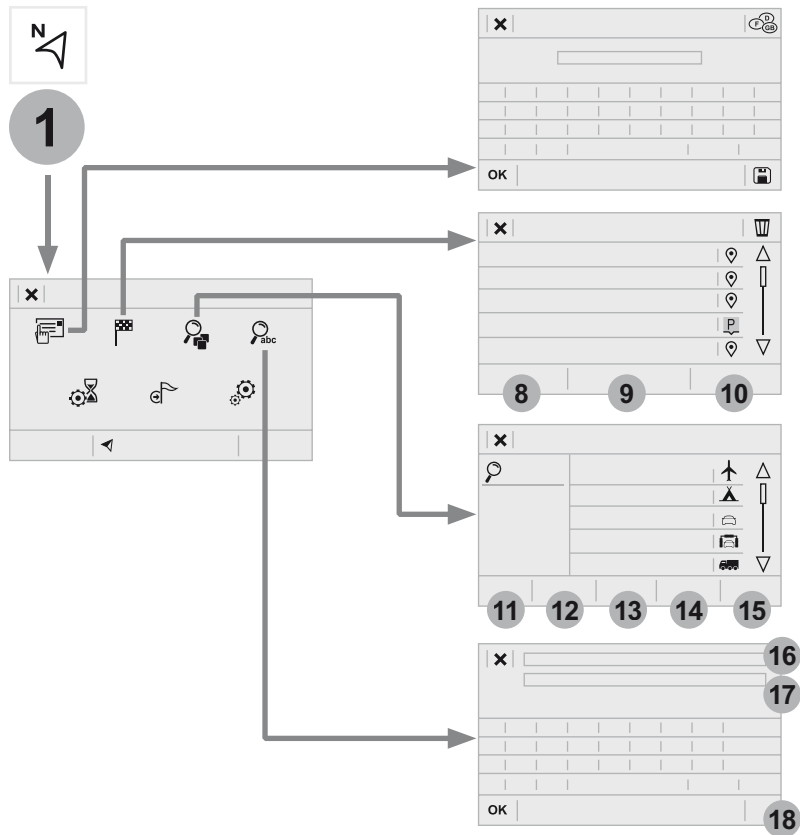
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Navigation</b></p> 	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<b>Stations</b>			Activate or deactivate the content available (stations, car parks, risk areas and danger areas).	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<b>Car park</b>			
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<b>Danger area</b>			
		☀️🌙	<b>Map color</b>			Select day or night mode for display of the map.
			<b>POI on map</b>	2	Travel	Select the POIs available.
				3	Active life	
				4	Commercial	
				5	Public	
				6	Geographic	
				☑️	Select all	
				ok		Save your choice or selection.
			<b>View map</b>	7	Modify city	Select or modify a city.
				☀️	Weather	Display on the map the content available in non-connected mode.
				🛢️	Petrol Station	
				P	Car park	
	🚗			Traffic		
	⚠️			Danger area		
	+			Select POI	Select from the POIs available.	
	🔍				Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.	
	🔍+					

















Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Zoom in	OK				Zoom in around the city selected.
	Around the vehicle					Select a location option.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather					Weather information transmitted in TMC mode.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of POIs.
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.
						

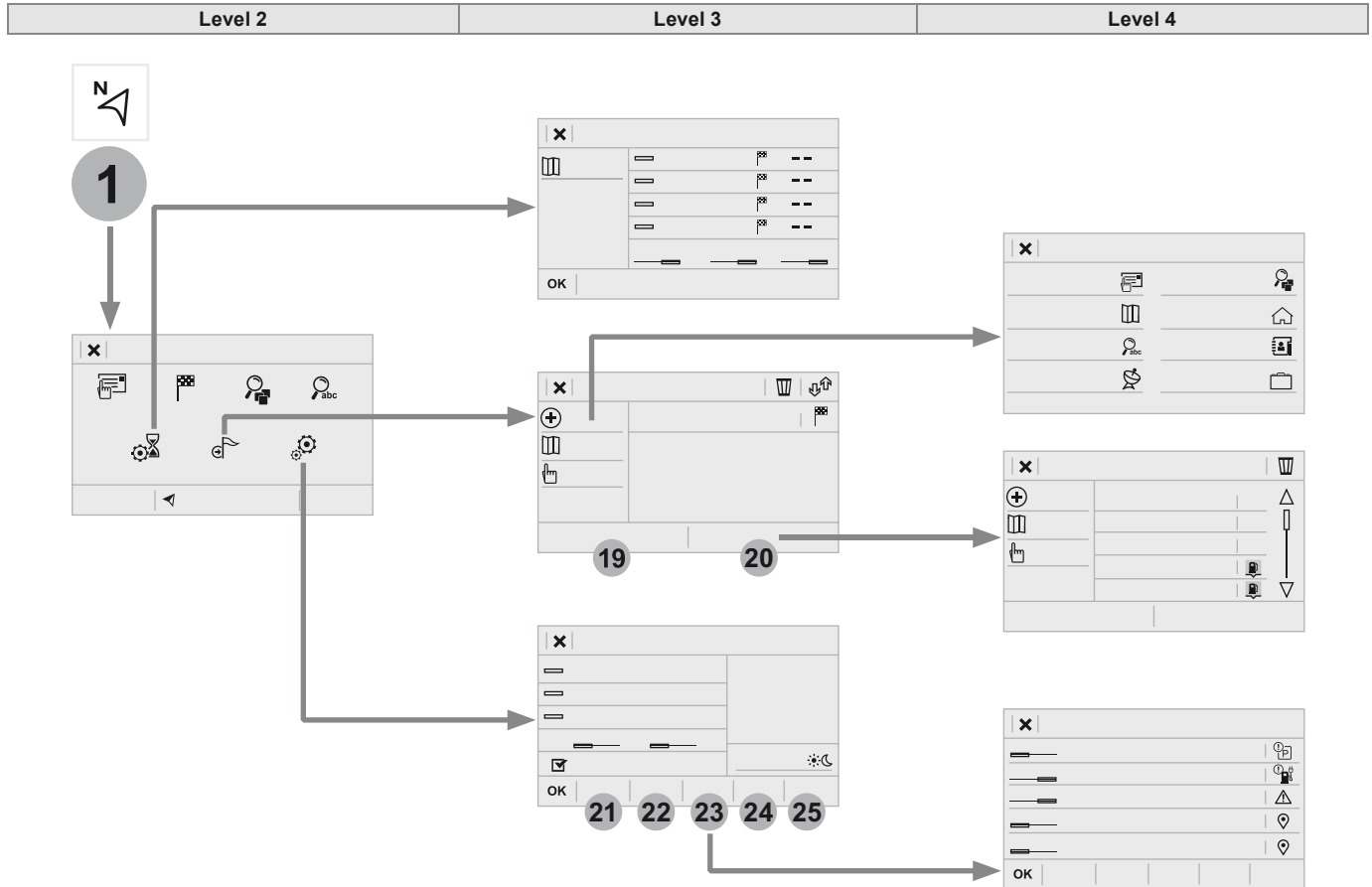









Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Traffic information sent in real time.
	Danger area				List of danger areas	Display the list of danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...).
	Select POI					Configure a category of POI to display.





Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
 <b>1</b> 	Navigation ↓ MENU ↓ Enter address					Select the country.
						Save the current address.
		OK				
 <b>1</b> 	Navigation ↓ MENU ↓ My destinations	<b>8</b>	Recent			Display the lists of destinations and start navigation.
		<b>9</b>	Preferred	 My home		
		<b>10</b>	Contact	 My work		
						
 <b>1</b> 	Navigation ↓ MENU ↓ Points of interest	<b>11</b>	Travel			List of categories available. After selection of category, select the point of interest.
		<b>12</b>	Active life			
		<b>13</b>	Commercial			
		<b>14</b>	Public			
		<b>15</b>	Geographic			
			Search			
 <b>1</b> 	Navigation ↓ MENU ↓ Search	<b>16</b>	Point of interest			Enter a point of interest.
		<b>17</b>	Address			Enter the address of a point of interest.
		<b>18</b>	Local / Connected			Enter settings for the POI search mode in a local or connected database depending on the services subscribed to.
		OK				



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4	Comments	
 <b>1</b> 	<p>Navigation ↓ MENU ↓ Guidance criteria</p>	 <b>Fast</b>			Select the guidance criteria (motorways, tolls and how traffic is taken into account).	
		 <b>Short</b>				
		 <b>Compromise</b>				
		 <b>Ecological</b>				
			 <b>See on map</b>			Display the route selected using the criteria.
			OK			Save your selections.
 <b>1</b> 	<p>Navigation ↓ MENU ↓ Routes / waypoints</p>	<b>19</b> <b>Waypoints</b>			Display the waypoints saved.	
		<b>20</b> <b>Route</b>			Display details of the route.	
		 <b>Add waypoint</b>		Add a waypoint	Add a waypoint from a list offered.	
		 <b>Preview</b>			Display the map.	
		 <b>Finish</b>			Press to calculate the route.	
					Delete one or more waypoints.	
					Move a waypoint in the list.	
 <b>1</b> 	<p>Navigation ↓ MENU ↓ Settings</p>	<b>21</b> <b>Aspects</b>			Enter choices and select the volume for the voice and stating the names of streets.	
		<b>22</b> <b>Options</b>				
		<b>23</b> <b>Alerts</b>				
		<b>24</b> <b>Vocal</b>				
		<b>25</b> <b>Mapping</b>				
			OK			Save the selections adopted.

## Choosing a new destination

### Towards a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.



Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

**i** To use the navigation system, it is necessary to enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or to take them from the list of "**Contacts**" or from the "**History**" of addresses.

**i** Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

### Towards a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

**i** Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival geographically.

## Towards "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a previously saved favourite destination.

## Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list offered to start navigation.

## Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

## Towards a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed



A long press on a point opens a list of POIs nearby.

## Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map. Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

Or



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

## TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

**i** TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.

The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

**i** The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

# Connected navigation

According to version

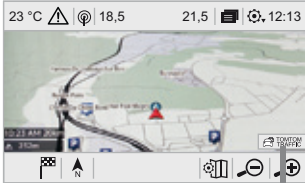
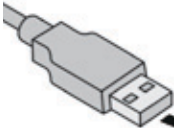
Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

**Network connection provided by the vehicle**



OR

**Network connection provided by the user**





## Connected navigation connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

**Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.**

## Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

## Network connection provided by the user

### USB connection



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is in charge mode when connected by USB cable.

### Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

### Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi connection found by the system and connect to it (see the "Connect-App" section).

- i** Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
  - With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

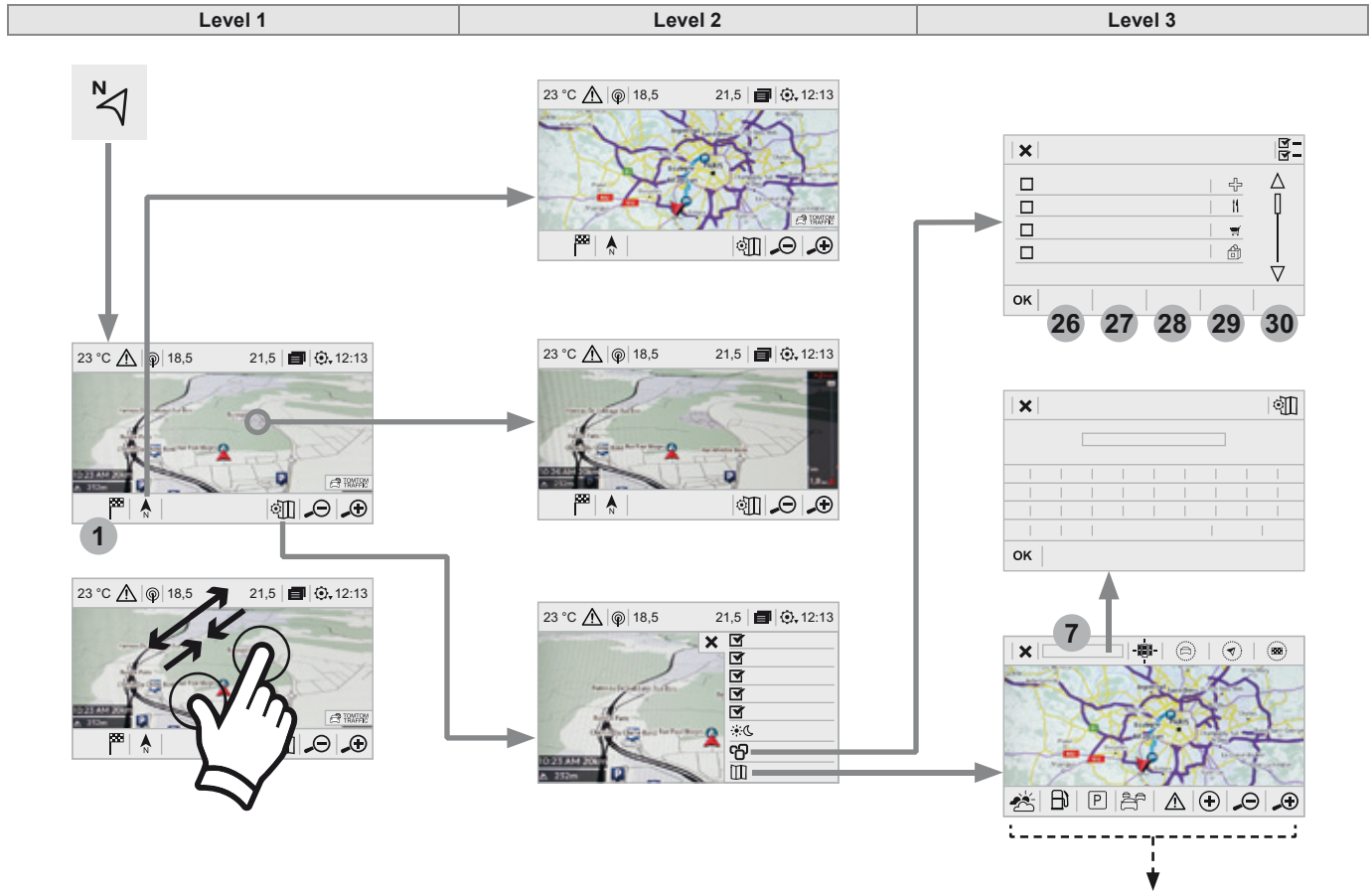
The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



















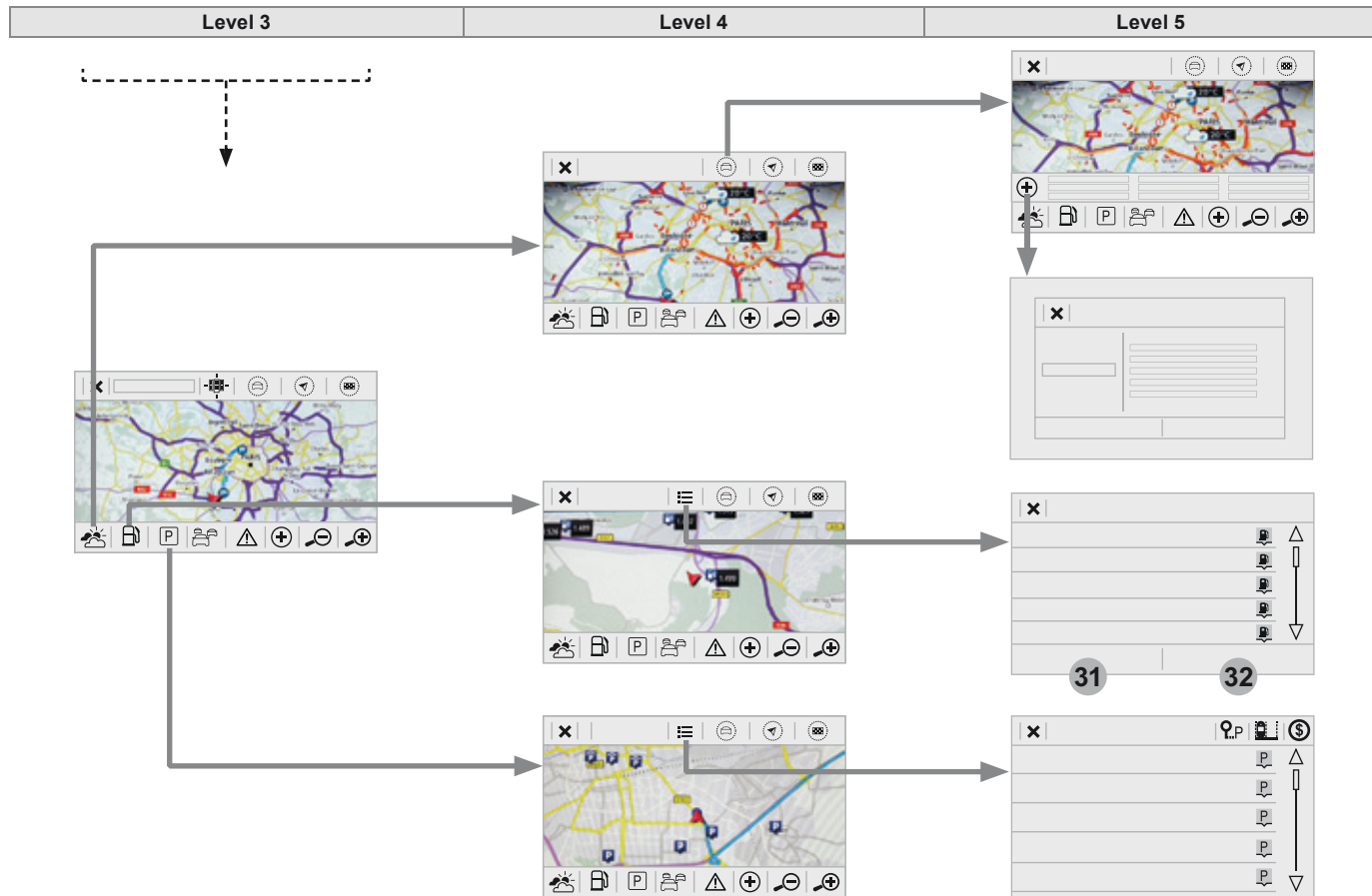
On the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.


































- i** The services offered with connected navigation are as follows. A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
  - Filling stations,
  - Car park,
  - Traffic,
  - POI, local search.
- A Danger area pack (option).

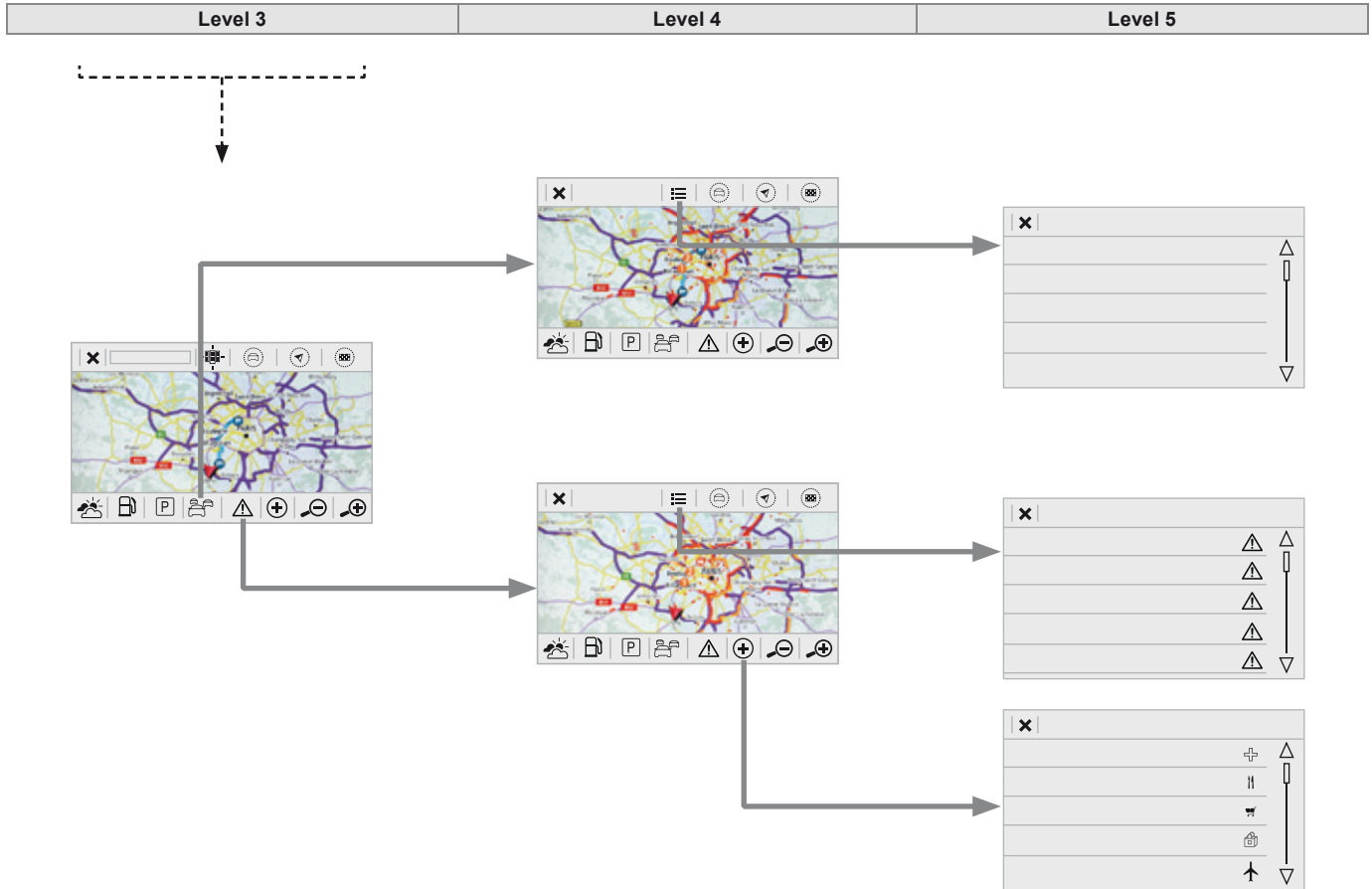
- i** The principles and standards are constantly changing. For communication between your smartphone and the system to operate correctly, we recommend that you **keep your smartphone's operating system up to date, and the time and date on your smartphone and the system correct.**









Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments		
	<p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> 					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.		
	<p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>TOMTOM TRAFFIC</b></p>					On connection of the system to a network, "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" is displayed instead of "TMC", for use of all of the options available, in real time.		
	<p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> 	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Weather</b>				Select the options. The map display the route chosen, depending on options.		
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Stations</b>						
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Car park</b>						
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Traffic</b>						
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Danger area</b>						
		 <b>Map color</b>				Select the display mode for the map.		
			<b>POI on map</b>	 <b>26</b> Commercial				Select the POIs available.
				 <b>27</b> Geographic				
 <b>28</b> Leisure								
 <b>29</b> Public								
 <b>30</b> Travel								
<b>OK</b>				Save the options.				
	<b>View map</b>	 <b>7</b> Modify city			Select or change a city.			
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.		
								



Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Select city	OK				Select or change a city.
	Around the vehicle					Select or change a city.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather				<b>Weather information</b>	Display the weather forecast for the day or the following days.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of filling stations and the associated information (address, prices, fuels, ...).
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
					<b>31 By distance</b>	
					<b>32 By price</b>	
	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	Display the list of car parks and the associated information (address, distance, spaces available, price, ...).
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
					<b>Sort by distance</b>	
					<b>Sort by spaces</b>	
			<b>Sort by price</b>			
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.
						



Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Display traffic information in real time: type, description and duration (in minutes).
	Danger areas				List of danger areas	Display danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...) in real time.
	Points of interest		Points of interest		Select POI	Display the list of POIs for the location selected.

## Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display the first level of information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.



The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the morning will be the maximum temperature for the day.

The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the evening will be the minimum temperature for the night.

## Settings specific to connected navigation



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Options**".



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger areas"**
- **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
- **"Authorise sending information"**



Select "**Alerts**".



Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".



For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "**Authorise sending information**".



The display of danger zones is conditioned by the legislation in force and subscription to the service.



## Declaration of "Danger areas"

**!** To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger areas**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**Declare a new danger area**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen.



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger area".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

## "Danger areas" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to view the version of the various modules installed in the system.



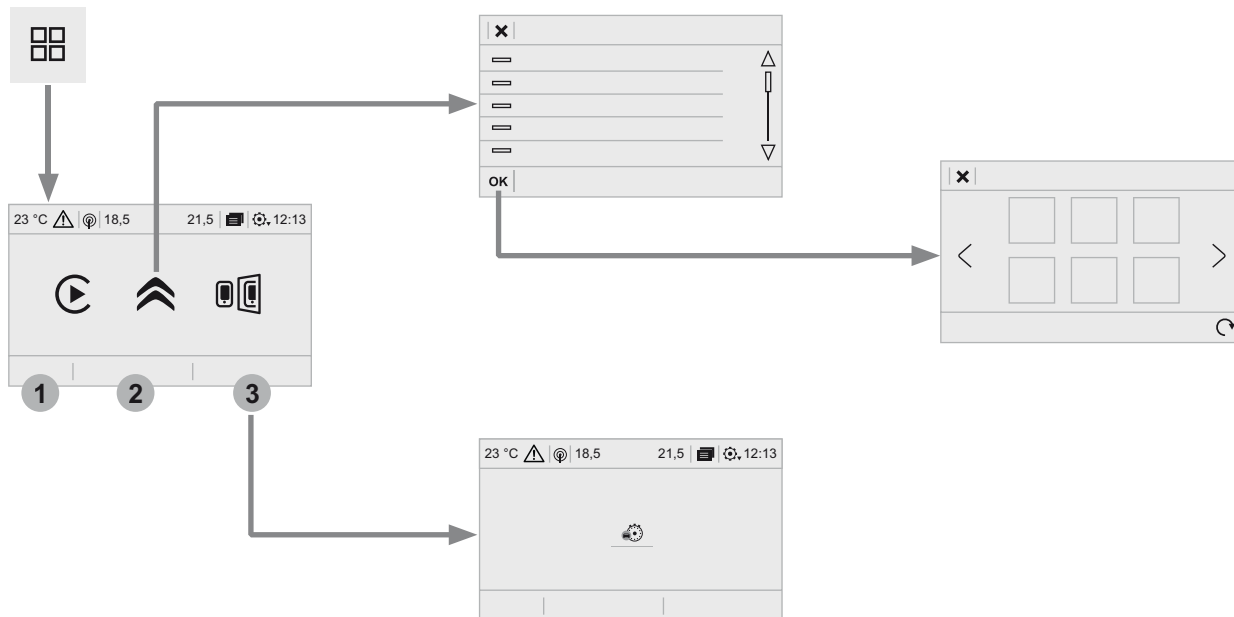
Select "**Update(s) due**".



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

# Applications

According to version / according to equipment



## Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

2

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.



Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

**i** Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

## Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

2

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**® or **MirrorLink**™ function.

## Applications

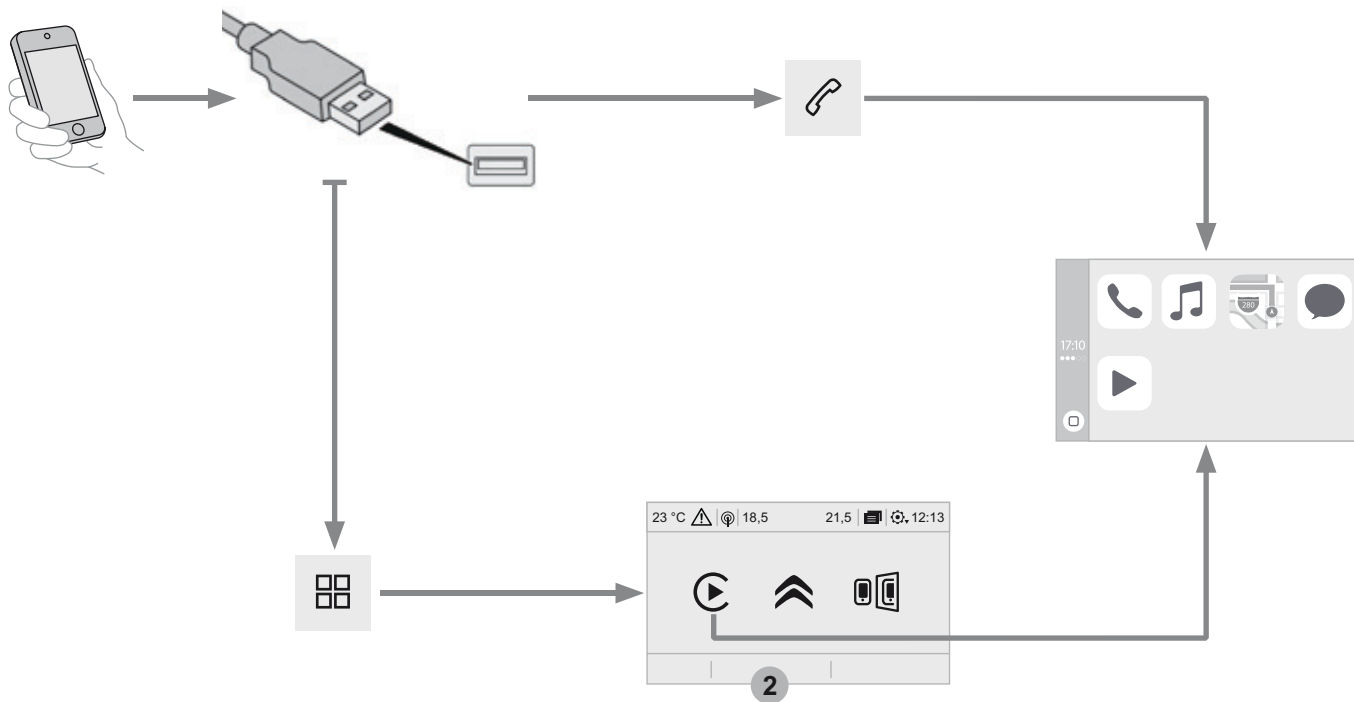


Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

3

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

## CarPlay® smartphone connection



**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



In the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.



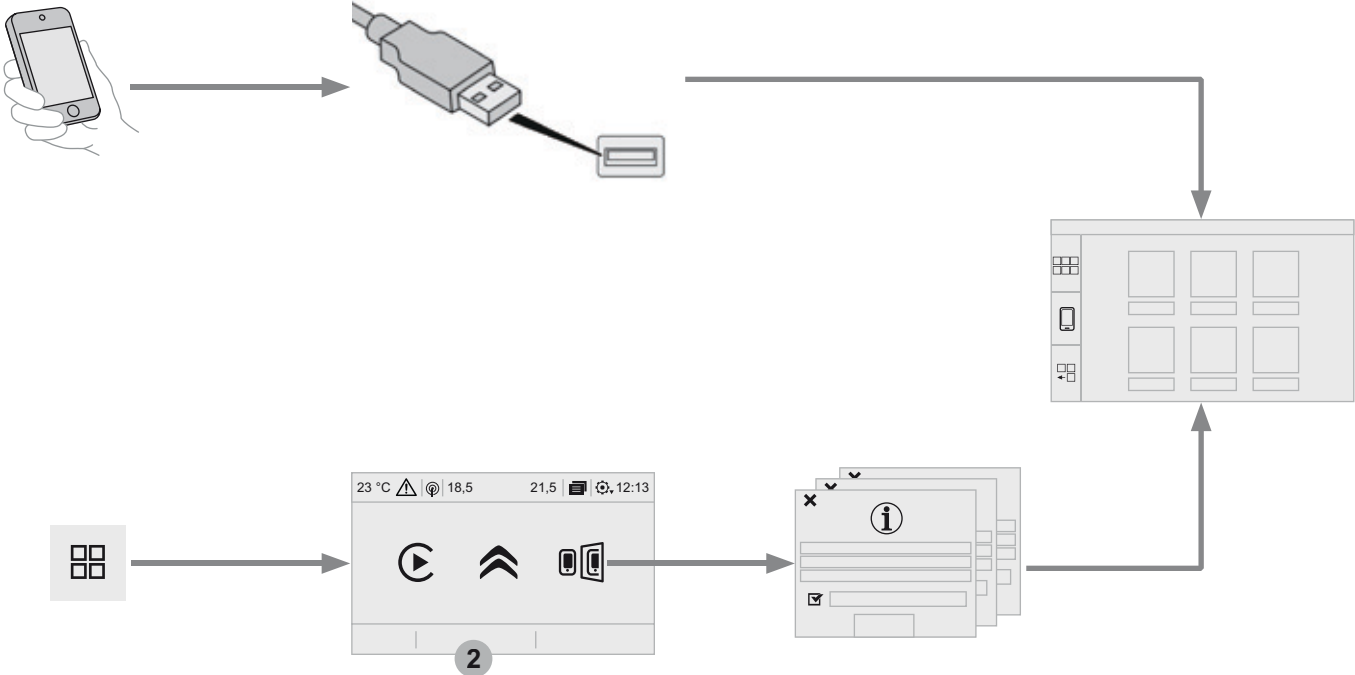
Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface

**i** On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

# MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen. The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; **update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system**. For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press on "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

**2**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the system's application.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

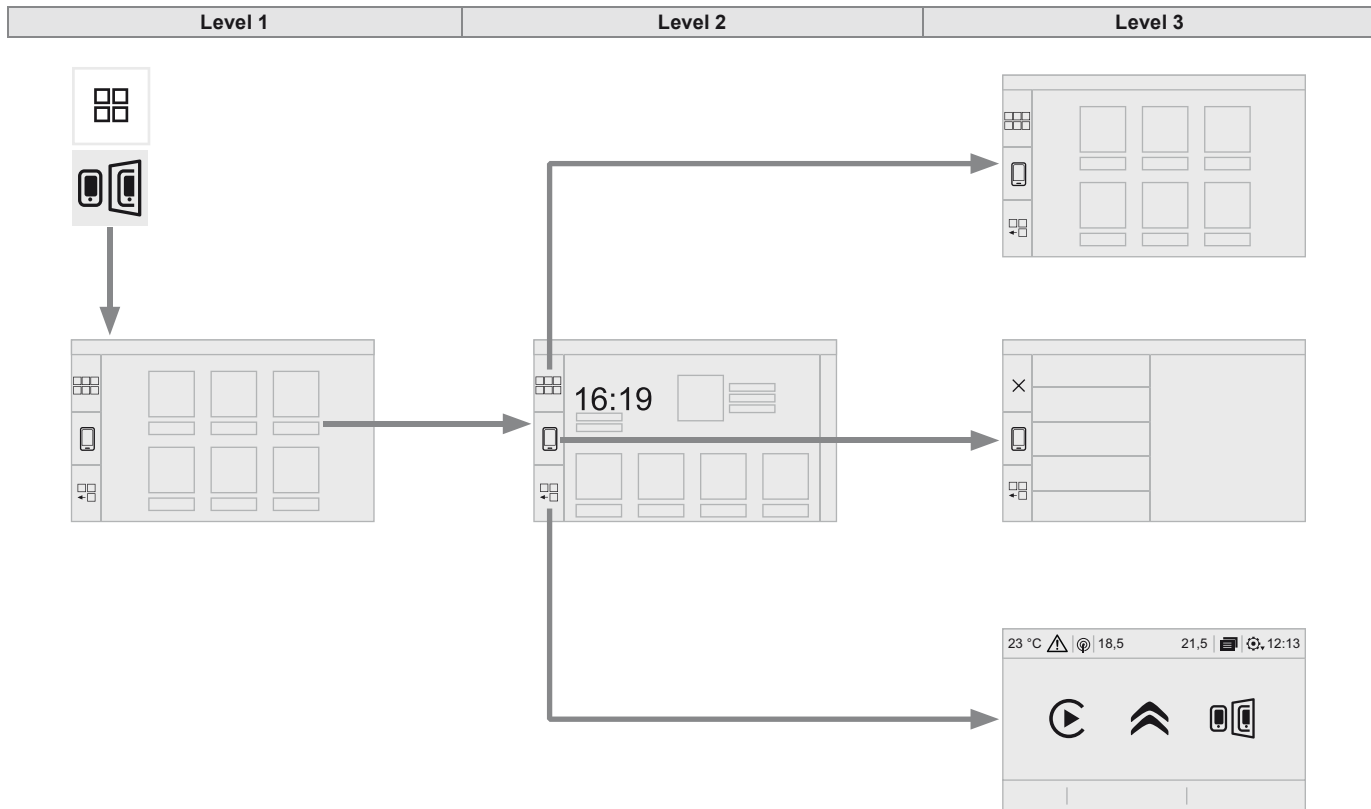
**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and end the connection.






Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.





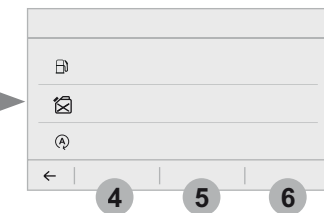
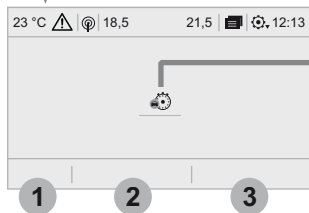
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	<p><b>Applications</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>MirrorLink™</b></p>					Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
						Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
						Go to the primary page of the "Applications" menu.



According to equipment

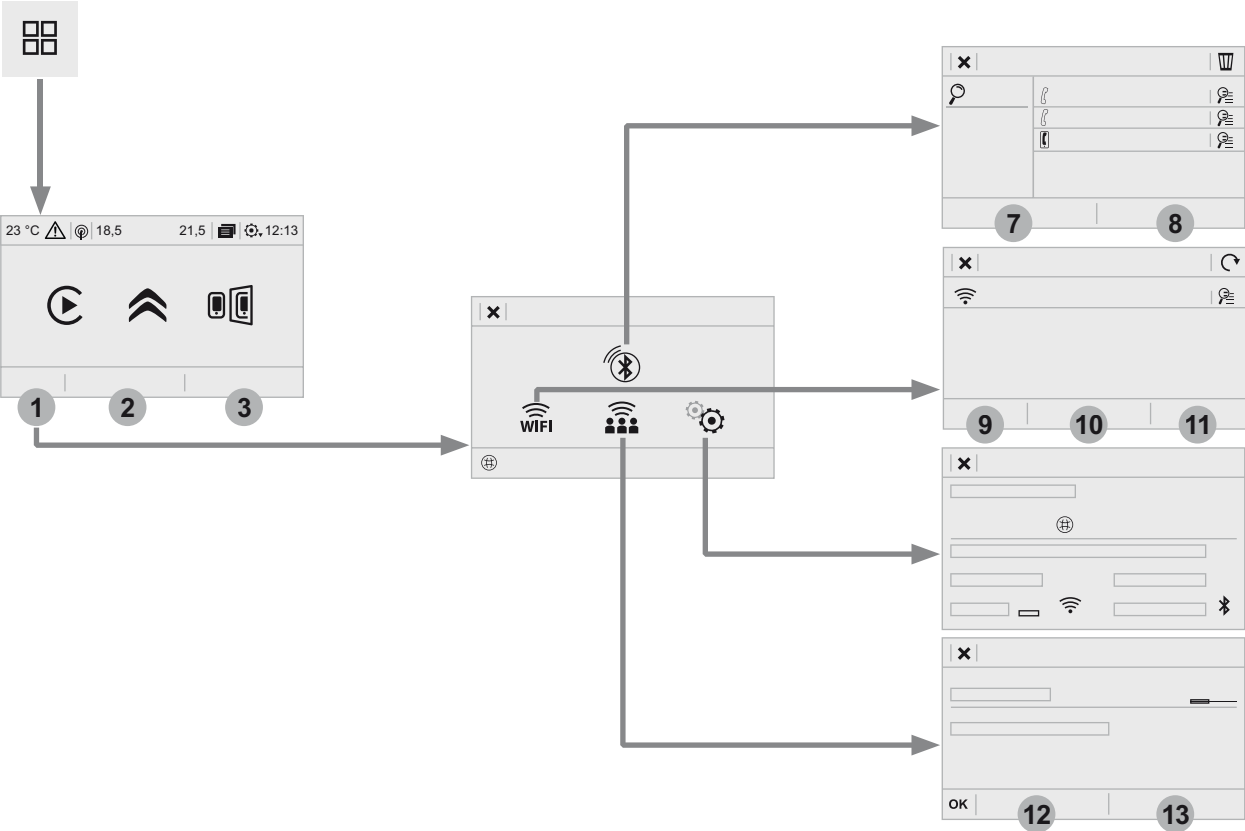
<b>Level 2</b>	<b>Level 3</b>
----------------	----------------












**3**



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>Trip computer</b>	<b>4</b>	Instant	System providing information about the current journey (range, fuel consumption...).
		<b>5</b>	Trip 1	
		<b>6</b>	Trip 2	
		←		Back to the Applications page.



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Bluetooth connection</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>All</b>	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		<b>8</b>	<b>Connected</b>	Display all telephones connected.
			<b>Search</b>	Start the search for a device to be connected.
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Wi-Fi network connection</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Secured</b>	Display the secured Wi-Fi networks.
		<b>10</b>	<b>Not secured</b>	Display the not secured Wi-Fi networks.
		<b>11</b>	<b>Stored</b>	Display the stored Wi-Fi networks.
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Manage connection</b>			Display the status of the subscription to the connected services, the status of the network connection and the connection mode.
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Share Wi-Fi connection</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>Activation</b>	Activate or deactivate the Wi-Fi connection sharing.
		<b>13</b>	<b>Settings</b>	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.
		ok		Save the settings.

## Bluetooth® connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press on **"Connect-App"** to display the primary page.



Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press on **"Bluetooth connection"**.



Select **"Search"**.  
The list of detected telephones is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

### Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.



The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

## Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.



Press "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

## Sharing the Wi-Fi connection

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

12

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

13

Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



To protect from any piracy and provide maximum security for your systems, it is recommended that you use a security code or a complex password.

## Managing connections



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

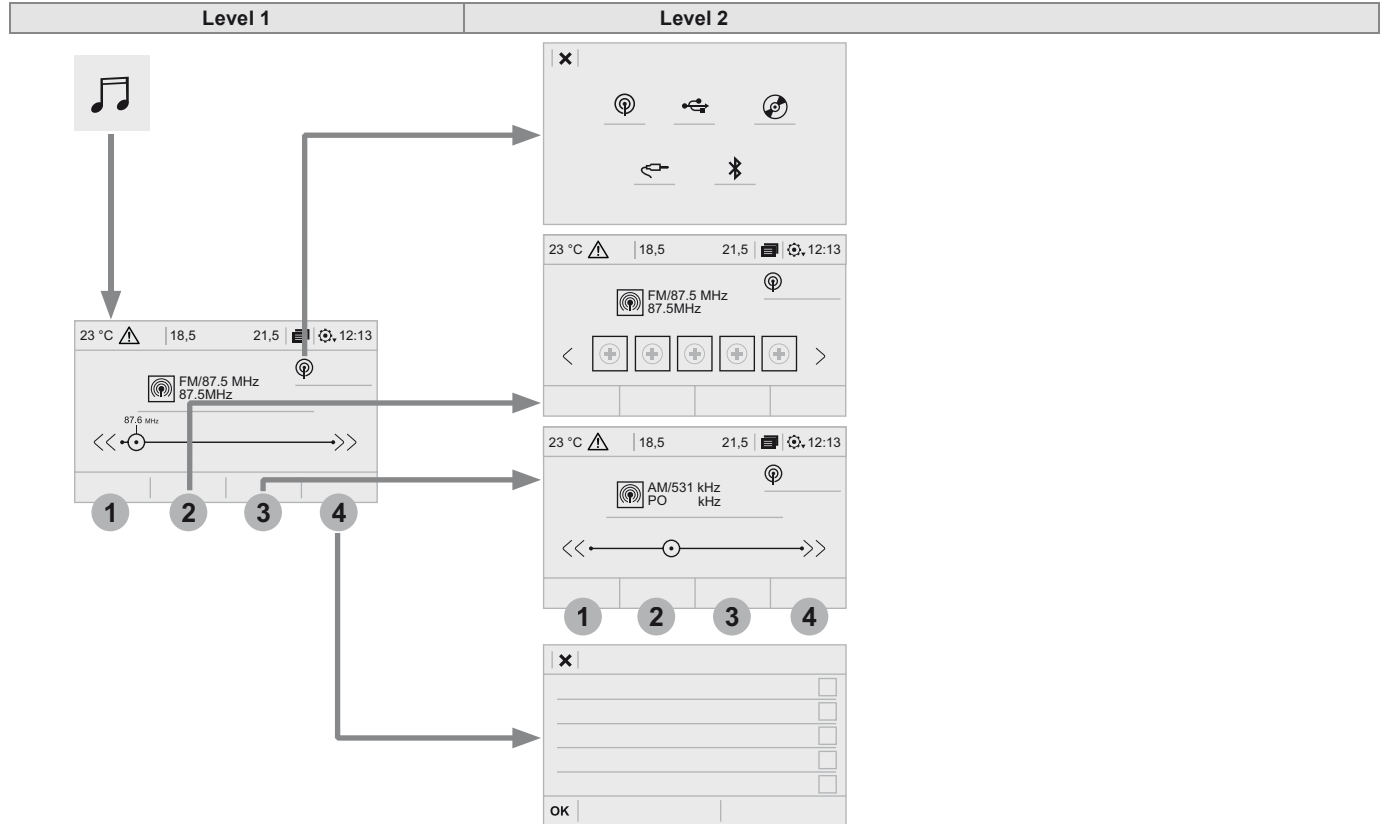


Select "**Manage connection**".












With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

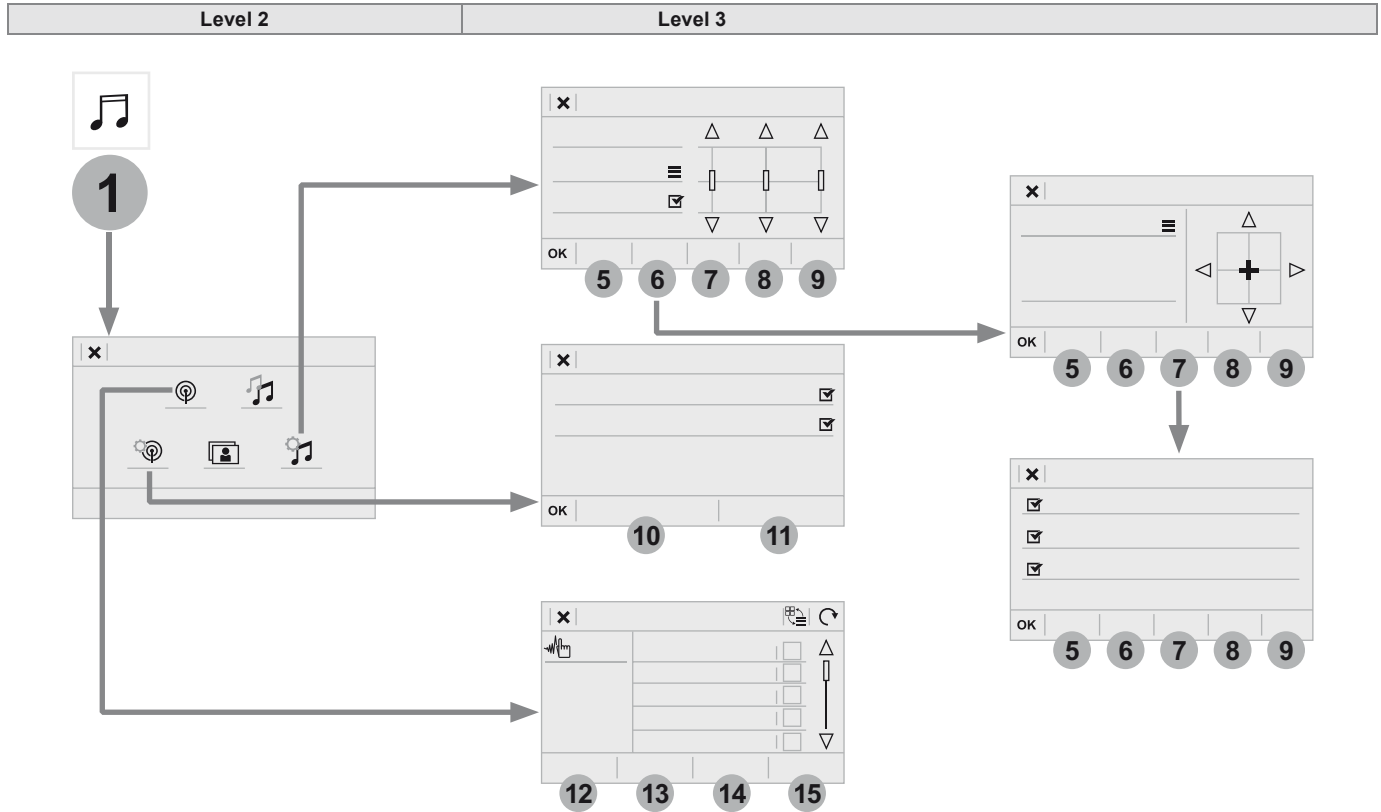
# Radio Media










According to version



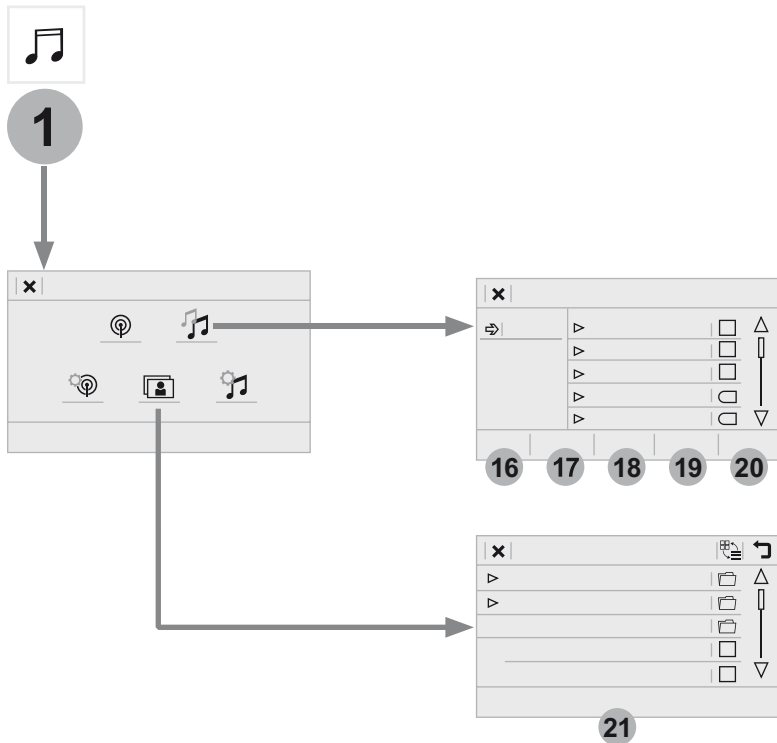






Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 	Radio Media ↓ Source	 Radio	Select change of source.	
		 USB		
		 iPod		
		 CD		
		 AUX		
 <b>2</b>	Radio Media ↓ Frequency / Presets	Frequency	Carry out an automatic or manual search for radio stations.	
		Presets	Make a long press on an empty location to preset a station.	
 <b>3</b>	Radio Media ↓ Band	 FM	Press the Band button to change waveband.	
		DAB		
		AM		
 <b>4</b>	Radio Media ↓ List	Radio stations	Open the list and press a radio station to select it.	

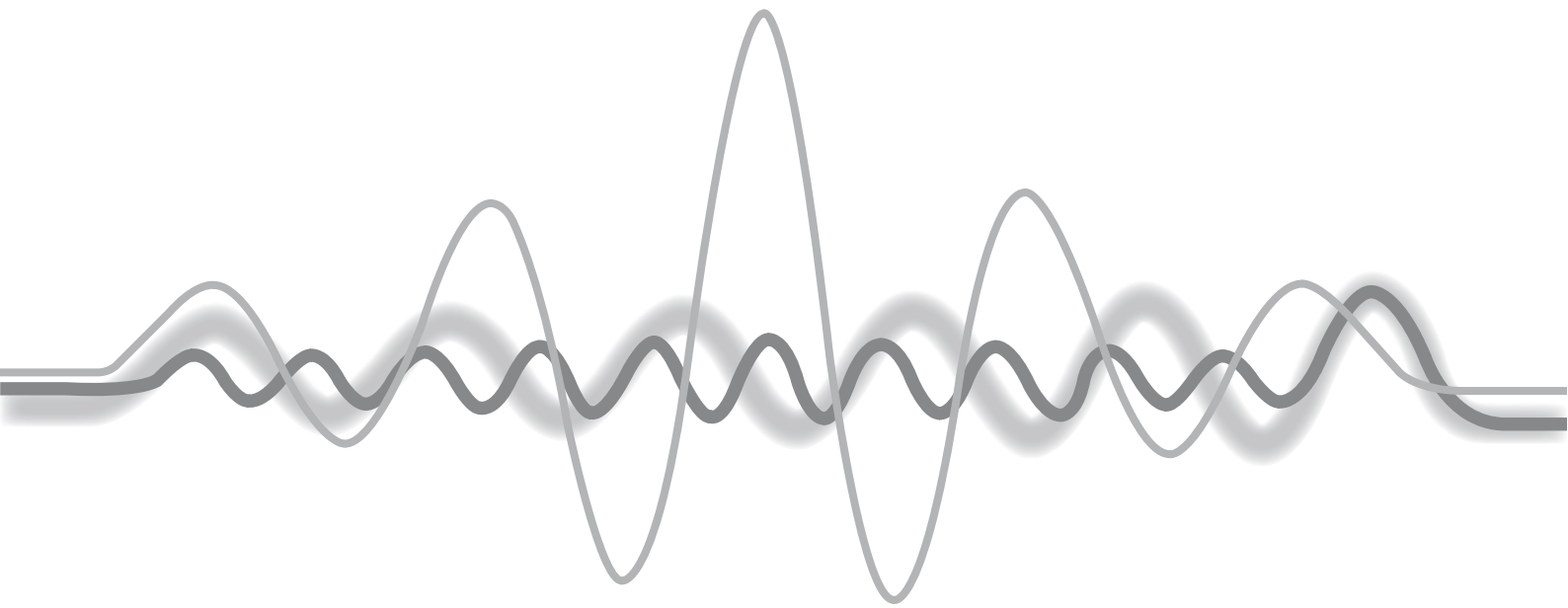


Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 <b>1</b> 	Radio Media ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Audio settings</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Ambience</b>	Select the sound ambience.
		<b>6</b>	<b>Distribution</b>	Sound distribution by the Arkamys® system.
		<b>7</b>	<b>Sound</b>	Adjust the volume or activate volume linked to speed.
		<b>8</b>	<b>Voice</b>	Adjust the voice volume.
		<b>9</b>	<b>Ringtone</b>	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save settings.
 <b>1</b> 	Radio Media ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Radio settings</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>General</b>	Activate or deactivate settings.
		<b>11</b>	<b>Announcements</b>	
		OK		Save settings.
 <b>1</b> 	Radio Media ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Radio stations</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>FM</b>	Display the list of radio stations for the band selected.
		<b>13</b>	<b>DAB</b>	
		<b>14</b>	<b>AM</b>	
		<b>15</b>	<b>Presets</b>	Select a preset radio station.
			<b>Frequency</b>	Enter a frequency manually.
				Change the screen display mode.
				Update the list according to reception.

Level 2 Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 <b>1</b> 	Radio Media	<b>16</b>	Albums	Choose a selection mode.
	↓ OPTIONS	<b>17</b>	Artists	
	↓ Music files	<b>18</b>	Genres	
		<b>19</b>	Playlists	
		<b>20</b>	Folders	
 <b>1</b> 	Radio Media ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Managing photos	<b>21</b>	USB	Display photos. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, .bmp, .png, .raw and .tiff with a maximum file size of 10 Mb per image.



## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.



Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.



Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.  
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

### Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency. (refer to the corresponding section)



Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

10

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

**i** RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Display text information



The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station, relating to the station or the song playing, to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

10

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

11

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



## DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

**!** Digital radio provides higher quality reception.  
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select the audio source.

**3**

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

### DAB-FM auto tracking

**i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.  
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

**1**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

**10**

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**".



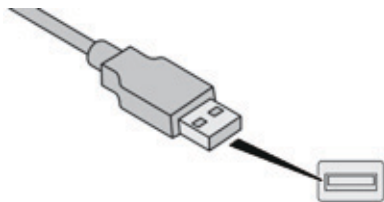
If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.  
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".



If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media

### USB port



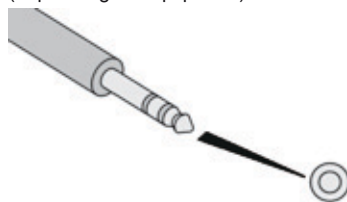
Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

### Auxiliary (AUX) socket

(depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

### CD player

(depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

### Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

### Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

**!** Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

- i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts). The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

- !** The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied. Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

- !** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

- i** It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, when burning it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet.

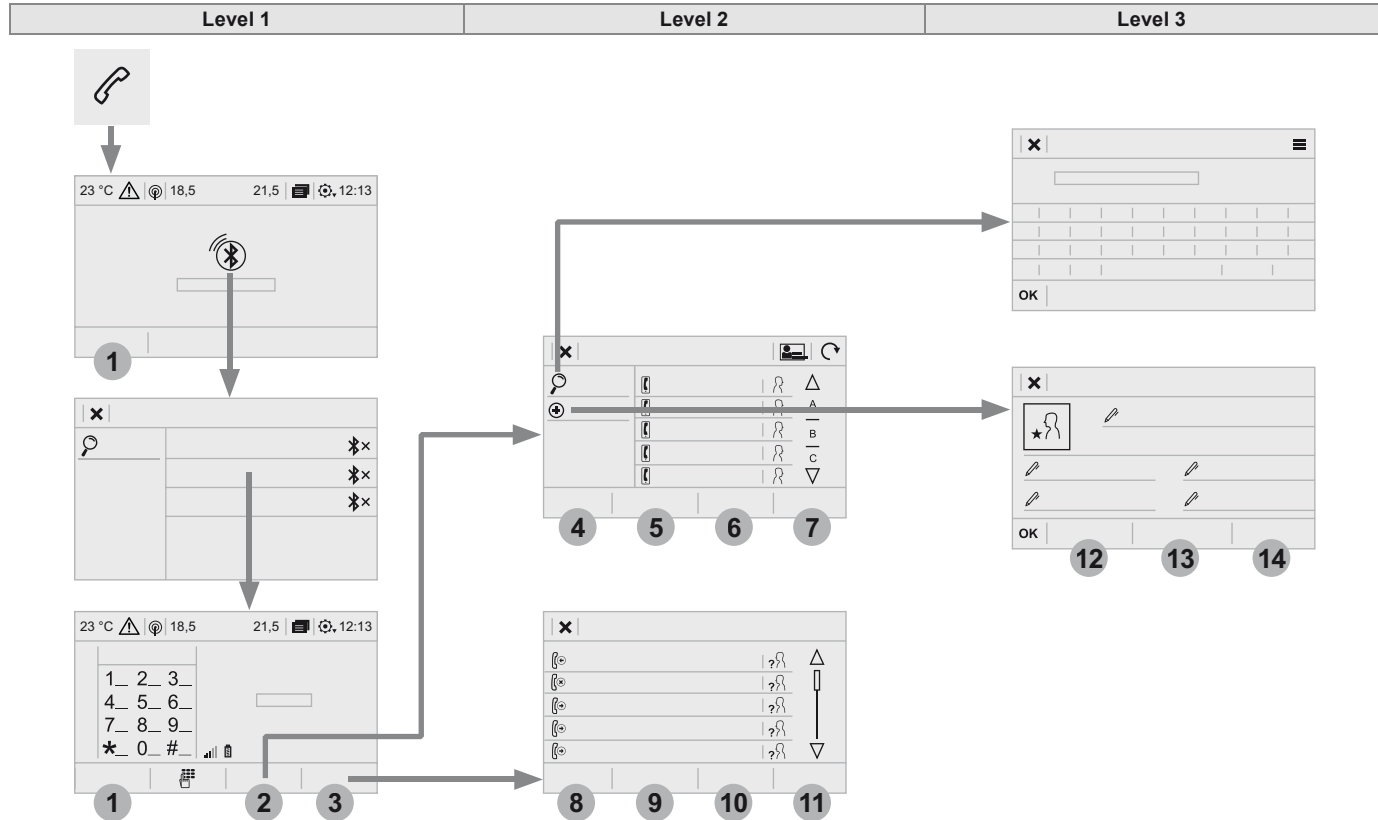
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.








It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for the best sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

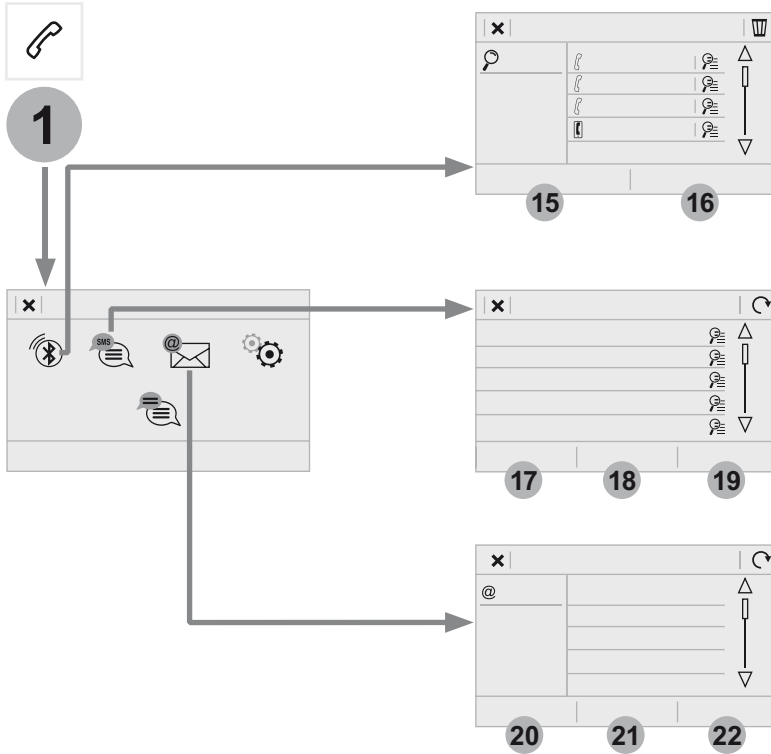
# Telephone









According to version



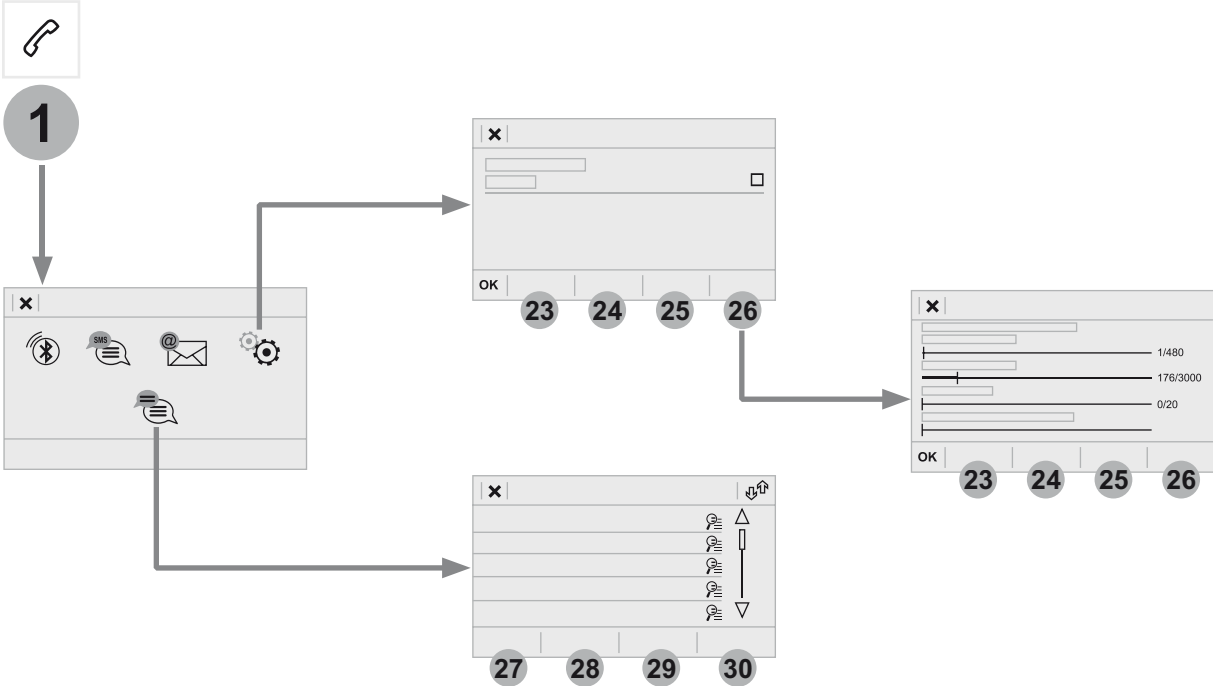
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments		
 <b>2</b>	Telephone ↓ Bluetooth ↓ Contact	<b>4</b>	All			View contacts according to presentation choices. Select a contact or a favourite saved in the system via the profile selected to start the call.		
		<b>5</b>	Telephone					
		<b>6</b>	Address					
		<b>7</b>	Favourites					
								Sort the contacts by Surname-First name or First name-Surname.
								Update the contacts from the telephone.
				Search	OK			Search for a contact in the directory.
				Create		<b>12</b>	Telephone	Create a new contact in the system.
				<b>13</b>	Address			
				<b>14</b>	Email			
				OK				
 <b>3</b>	Telephone ↓ Bluetooth ↓ Calls	<b>8</b>	All			View calls according to choice of presentation. Select a contact to start the call.		
		<b>9</b>	Incoming					
		<b>10</b>	Outgoing					
		<b>11</b>	Missed					
								View details for the contact.

Level 2 | Level 3







Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Bluetooth connection</b>	<b>15</b> All	Display all telephones detected and saved.	
		<b>16</b> Connected	Display all connected telephones.	
		<b>Search</b>	Start the search for a device to connect.	
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Messages</b>	<b>17</b> All	Display messages according to the choice made.	
		<b>18</b> Received		
		<b>19</b> Sent		
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Email</b>	<b>20</b> Received	Display emails according to the choice made.	
		<b>21</b> Sent		
		<b>22</b> Not read		
		<b>Mailbox</b>		

Level 2 | Level 3






Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Settings</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>Security</b>	Make driving safe.
		<b>24</b>	<b>Voicemail</b>	Enter and save the number for the telephone voicemail.
		<b>25</b>	<b>Ringtone</b>	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		<b>26</b>	<b>Statistics</b>	Display data for the telephone connected.
		OK		Save the options.
 <b>1</b> 	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ <b>Quick messages</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>Delayed</b>	Select a quick message from the categories, as required.
		<b>28</b>	<b>My arrival</b>	
		<b>29</b>	<b>Not available</b>	
		<b>30</b>	<b>Other</b>	

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone

 Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on **"Bluetooth search"**.

Or



Select **"Search"**.  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

### Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **Telephone** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **Streaming** (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- **Mobile internet data**.

**i** The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation, having first activated sharing of the connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

### To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.



The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

## Managing paired telephones

**i** This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

**1**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

**SRC**



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press

**SRC**



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

## Making a call

- ! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

## Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Managing contacts / entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

2

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

12

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

13

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

14

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

**i** The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

## Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

**!** The access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.  
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

**i** The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.  
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

## Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

## Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the email chosen in the list.



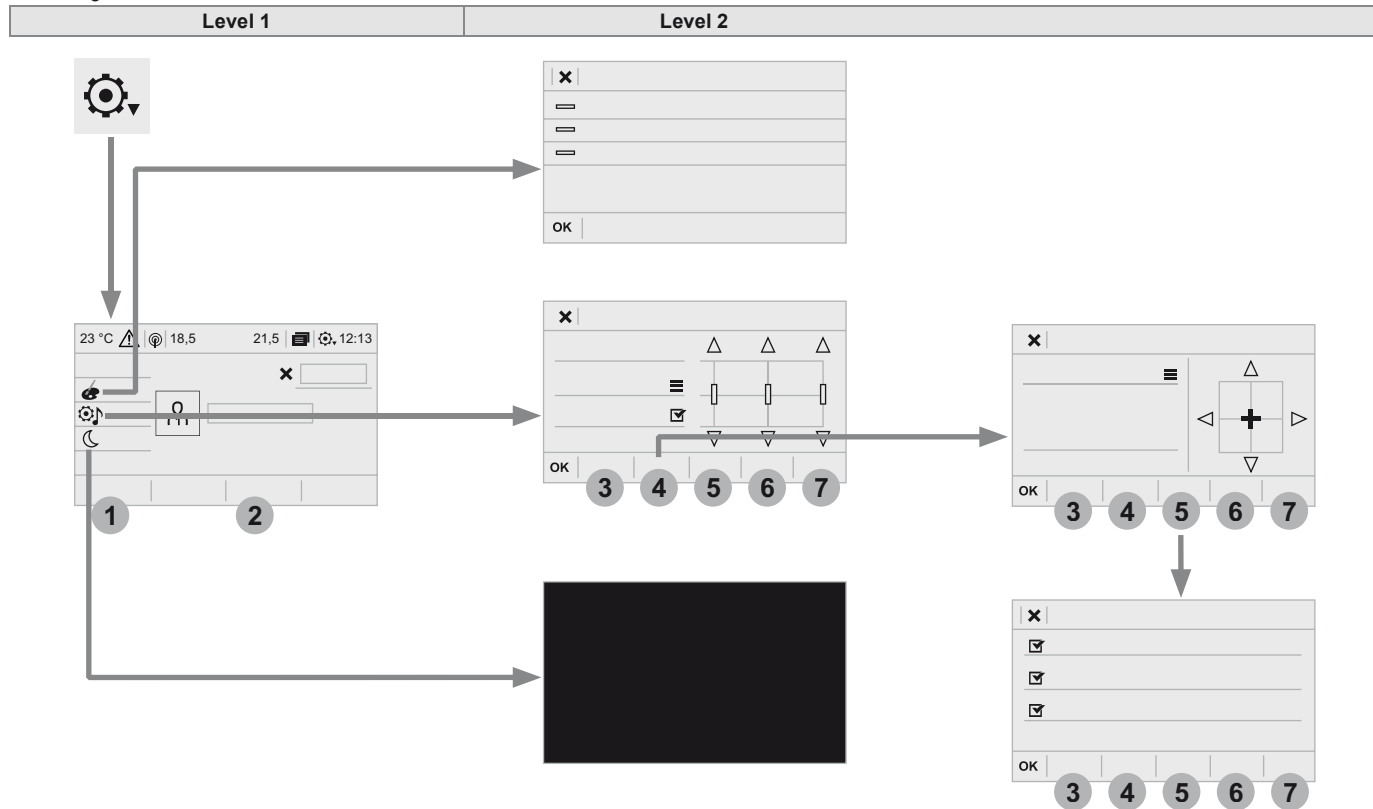
Press "**Play**" to start playing the email.


















Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

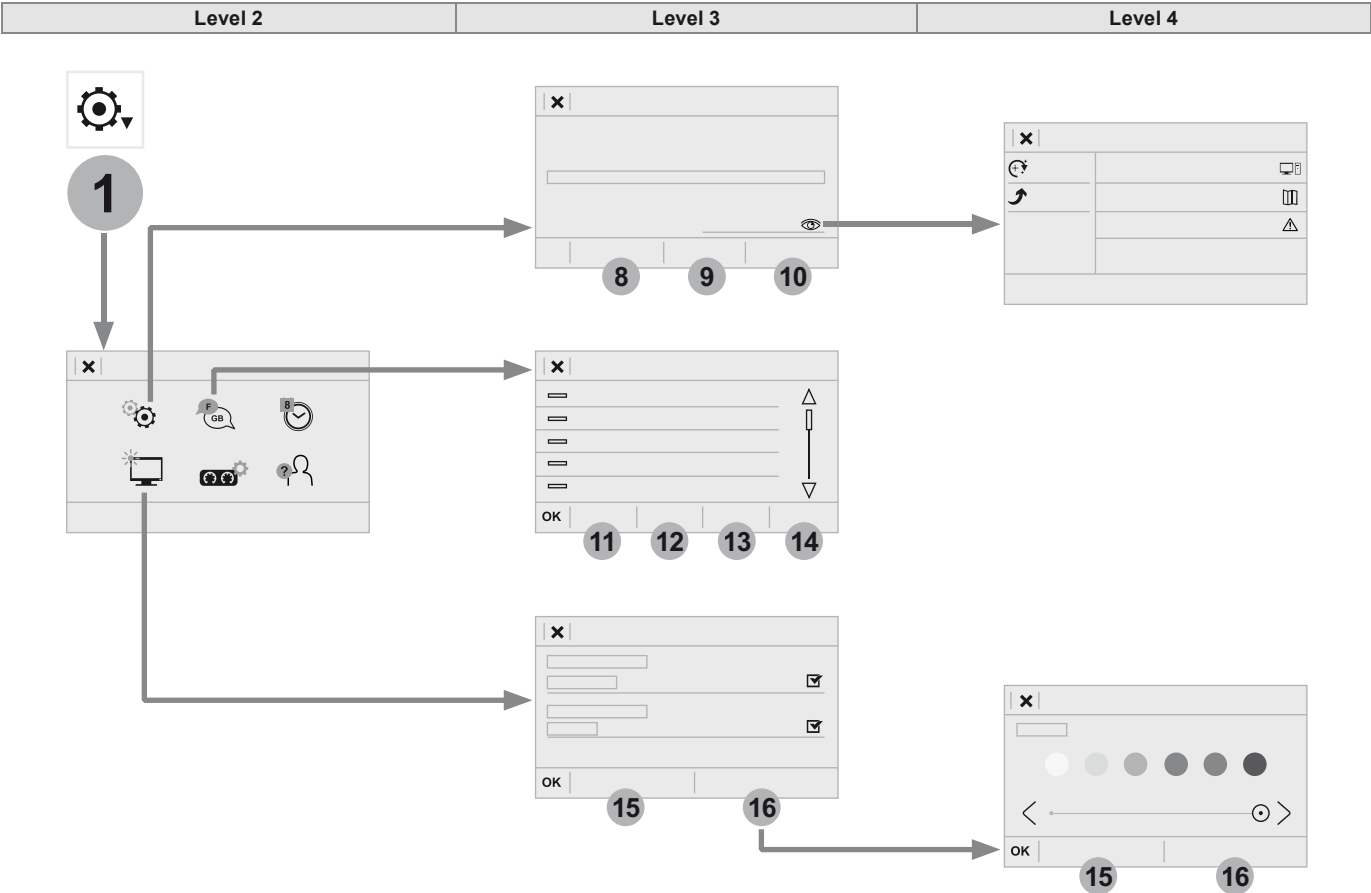
# Settings
















According to version

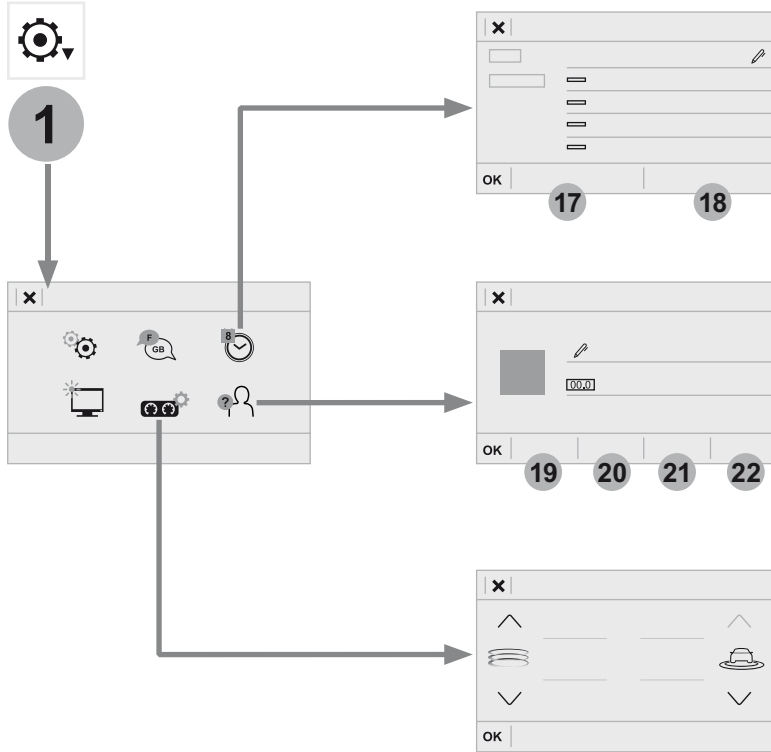
















Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 	Settings ↓ Color schemes		Color schemes: 1,2,3, ...	Having chosen the color scheme, save the setting.
		OK		
 	Settings ↓ Audio settings		Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
			Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys® system.
			Sound	Adjust the volume or activate linked to speed.
			Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
			Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		
 	Settings ↓ Turn off screen			Function allowing the display to be switched off. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
 	Settings ↓ Profile (1, 2, 3)			Activate the profile selected.



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments		
 <b>1</b> 	<p>Settings ↓ OPTIONS ↓ System settings</p>	<b>8</b>	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Set the units used for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.		
					Temperature			
				<b>9</b>	Factory settings		Reinitialize	Restore the factory settings.
				<b>10</b>	System info		View	View the versions of the different modules (system, mapping, risk areas) installed in the system as well as the updates available.
				OK				Save the settings.
 <b>1</b> 	<p>Settings ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Languages</p>	<b>11</b>	All			Select the language then confirm.		
		<b>12</b>	Europe					
		<b>13</b>	Asia					
		<b>14</b>	America					
		OK				Having selected the language, save the setting.		
 <b>1</b> 	<p>Settings ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Screen configuration</p>	<b>15</b>	Animation			Activate or deactivate settings.		
		<b>16</b>	Brightness			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.		
		OK				Save the settings.		



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments	
 <b>1</b> 	Settings ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ Setting the time-date	<b>17</b>	Date		Date	Enter the date and select the date format.	
					Date format:		
		<b>18</b>	Time		Time	Set the time.	
					Time Zone	Define the time zone.	
					Time format:	Select the time format: 12h / 24h.	
					Synchronisation with GPS (UTC):	Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites.	
OK				Save the settings.			
 <b>1</b> 	Settings ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ Setting of the profiles	<b>19</b>	Profile 1		Enter settings for the profiles.		
		<b>20</b>	Profile 2				
		<b>21</b>	Profile 3				
		<b>22</b>	Common profile				
		OK				Save the settings.	
		 <b>1</b> 	Settings ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b> ↓ Driver screen configuration		Personalisation of the dashboard		Choose and select the display information required on the dashboard.
OK						Confirm the selections.	

## Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**".

Or



"**Position**".

Or



"**Sound**".

Or



"**Voice**".

Or



"**Ringtone**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

**!** The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

**i** The audio **Ambience** settings (6 ambiances available) as well as the **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** settings are different and independent for each sound source. Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**".

The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

**i** On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## Profile settings



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".



Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

**i** The location for the photograph is square; the system deforms the original photograph if in another format.

00.0

Press this button to initialise the profile selected.



Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

**2**

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

**3**

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

**4**

"**Distribution**".

Or

**5**

"**Sound**".

Or

**6**

"**Voice**".

Or

**7**

"**Ringtone**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

15

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate "**Automatic scrolling**".

16

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

8

Select "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

9

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

10

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

## Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

## Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".



17

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

**i** Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.  
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.Select "**Setting the time-date**".

18

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites (UTC).

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

## Color schemes



As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.Select "**Color schemes**".Select a color scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the color scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

# Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

## Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger areas" does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings (without the possibility of adjusting the volume) in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger area" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the "Danger area". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

## Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

## Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player does not recognise.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...).	Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiances) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

## Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble, Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).



# CITROËN Connect Radio

## Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone



	Contents
First steps	96
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	98
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	99
Menus	100
Applications	102
Radio Media	106
Telephone	118
Settings	132
Frequently asked questions	143

**i** The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Volume.

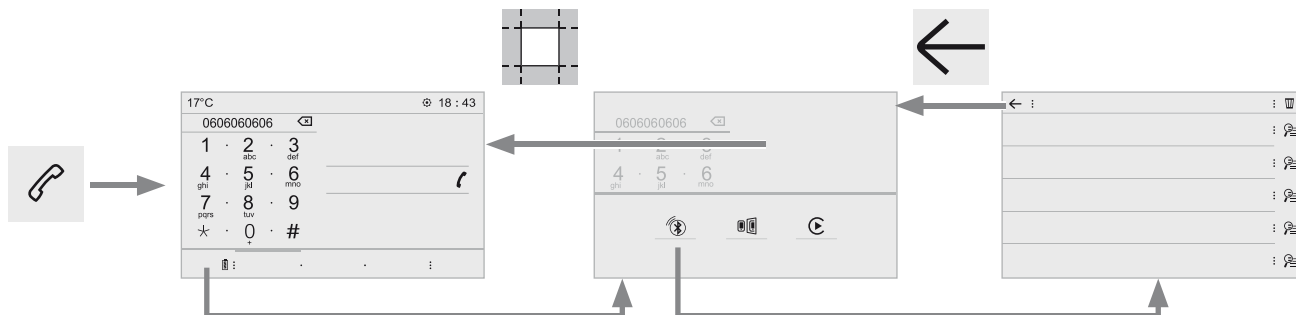
Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm. Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

**!** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen.

Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

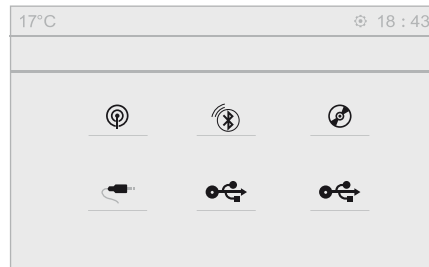


Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB\* / AM\* stations.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth\* and using Bluetooth\* audio streaming.
- CD player.
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).



**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.

**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

\* Depending on equipment.

## Steering mounted controls - Type 1



**Radio:**

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

**Media:**

Select of the previous / next track

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.



**Radio:**

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

**Media:**

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the sorting options.



Change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming)



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.



## Steering mounted controls - Type 2



### Voice commands:

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/ Restore the sound.  
Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



**Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

**Telephone** (short press): call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access to telephone menu.



**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): previous / next preset.

**Media** (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.

**Short press:** confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.



**Radio:** display the list of stations.

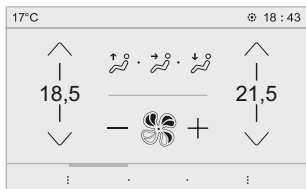
**Media:** display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

# Menus

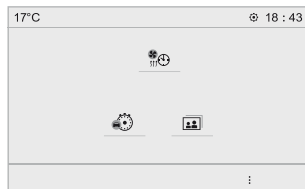
According to version.

## Air conditioning



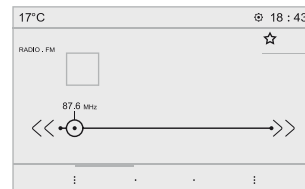
Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.

## Applications



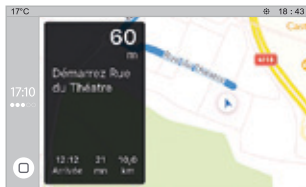
Access configurable equipment.

## Radio Media



Select an audio source or radio station.

## Navigation



Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.



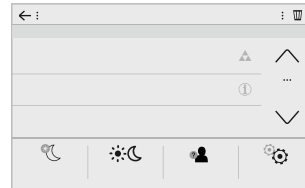
## Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.  
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.



## Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).



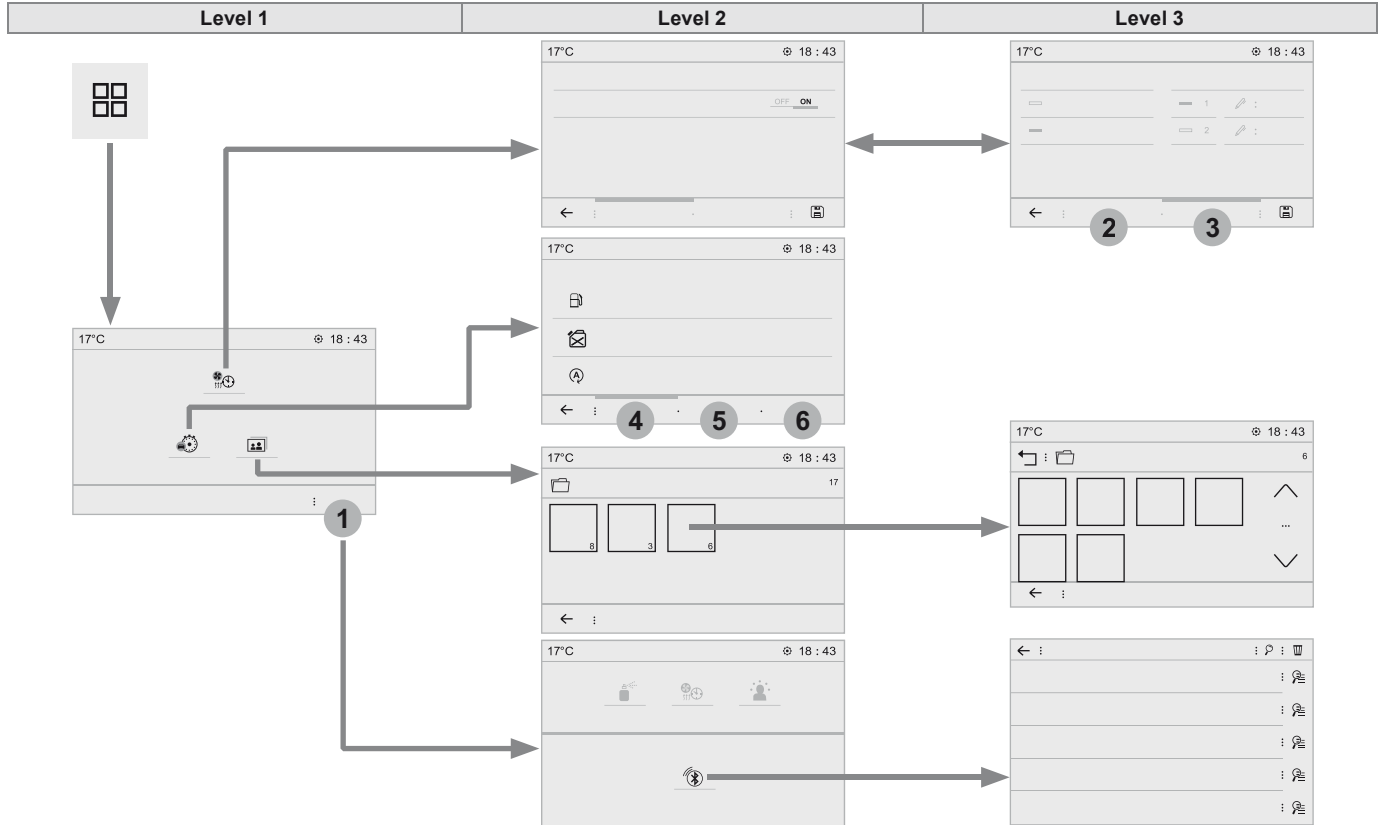
## Driving



















Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

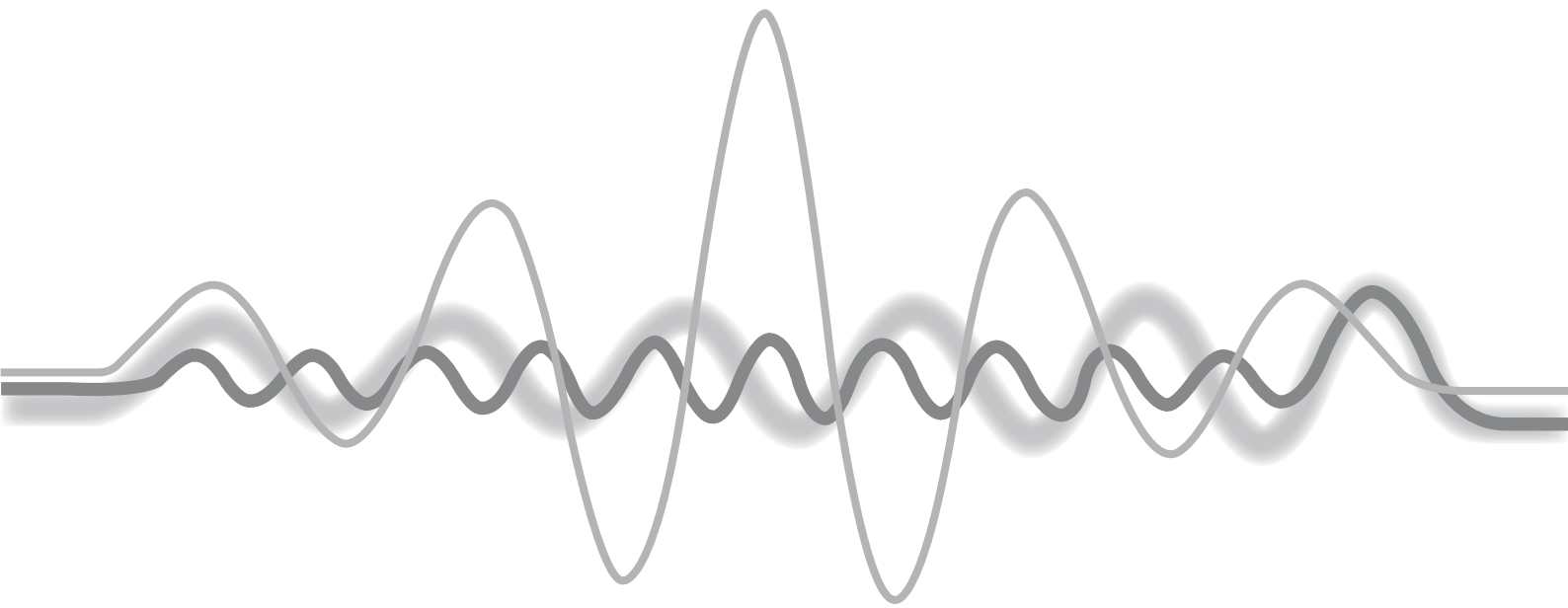
# Applications

According to version / according to equipment






Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>Temperature conditioning</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>State</b>			Activate / deactivate the temperature conditioning.
		<b>3</b>	<b>Settings</b>			Configure the pre-conditioning.
						Save the parameters.
						Confirm the settings.
 	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>Trip computer</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Instant</b>			System providing information about the current journey (range, consumption...).
		<b>5</b>	<b>Trip 1</b>			
		<b>6</b>	<b>Trip 2</b>			
						Go back to the Applications page.
 	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>Photos</b>		<b>Photo gallery</b>		<b>Photos</b>	Go to the photo gallery.
						Go back a level.
 <b>1</b>	<b>Applications</b> ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b>		<b>Bluetooth connection</b>		<b>Search</b>	Start the search for a device to be connected.
					<b>Delete</b>	Delete one or more devices.



## Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



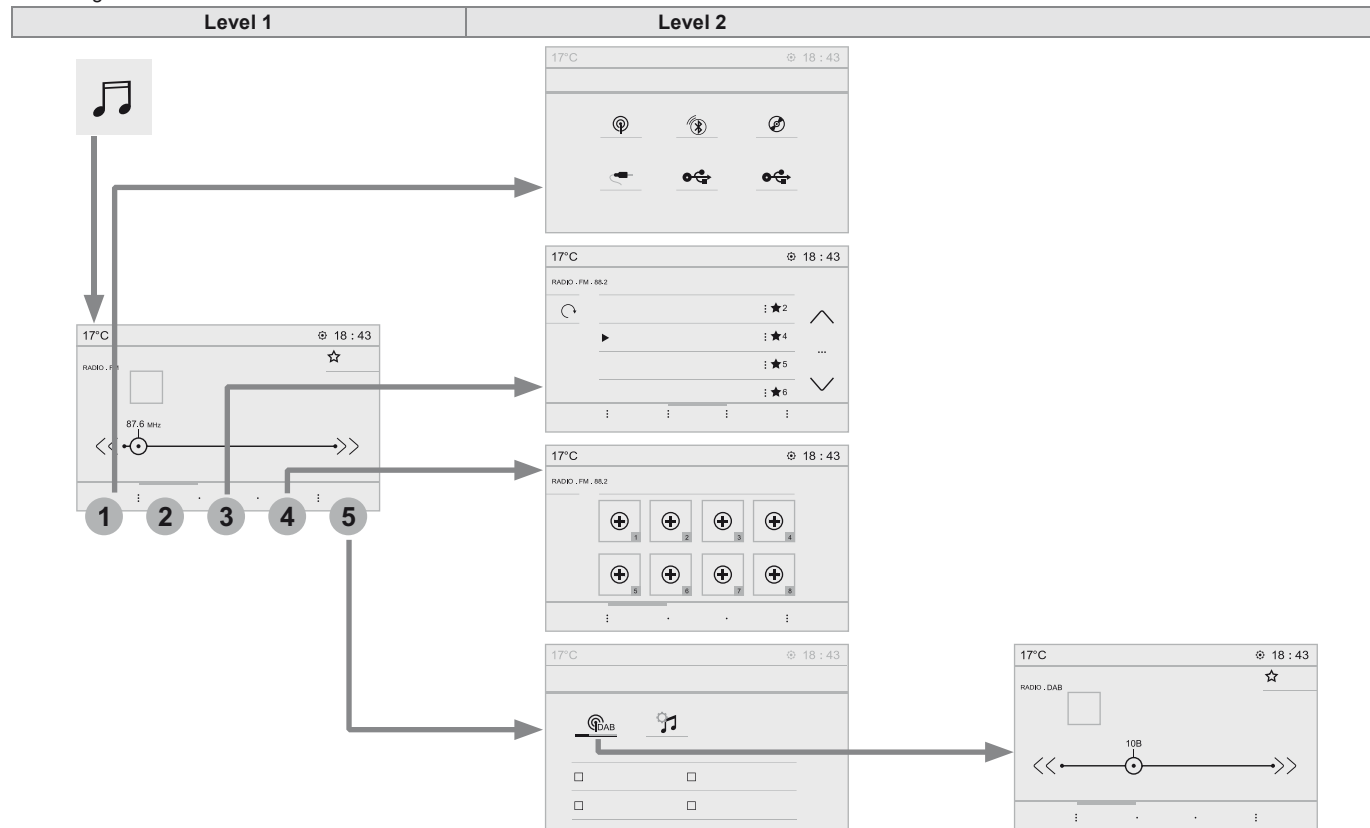
Press this button to display the details of the photo.

























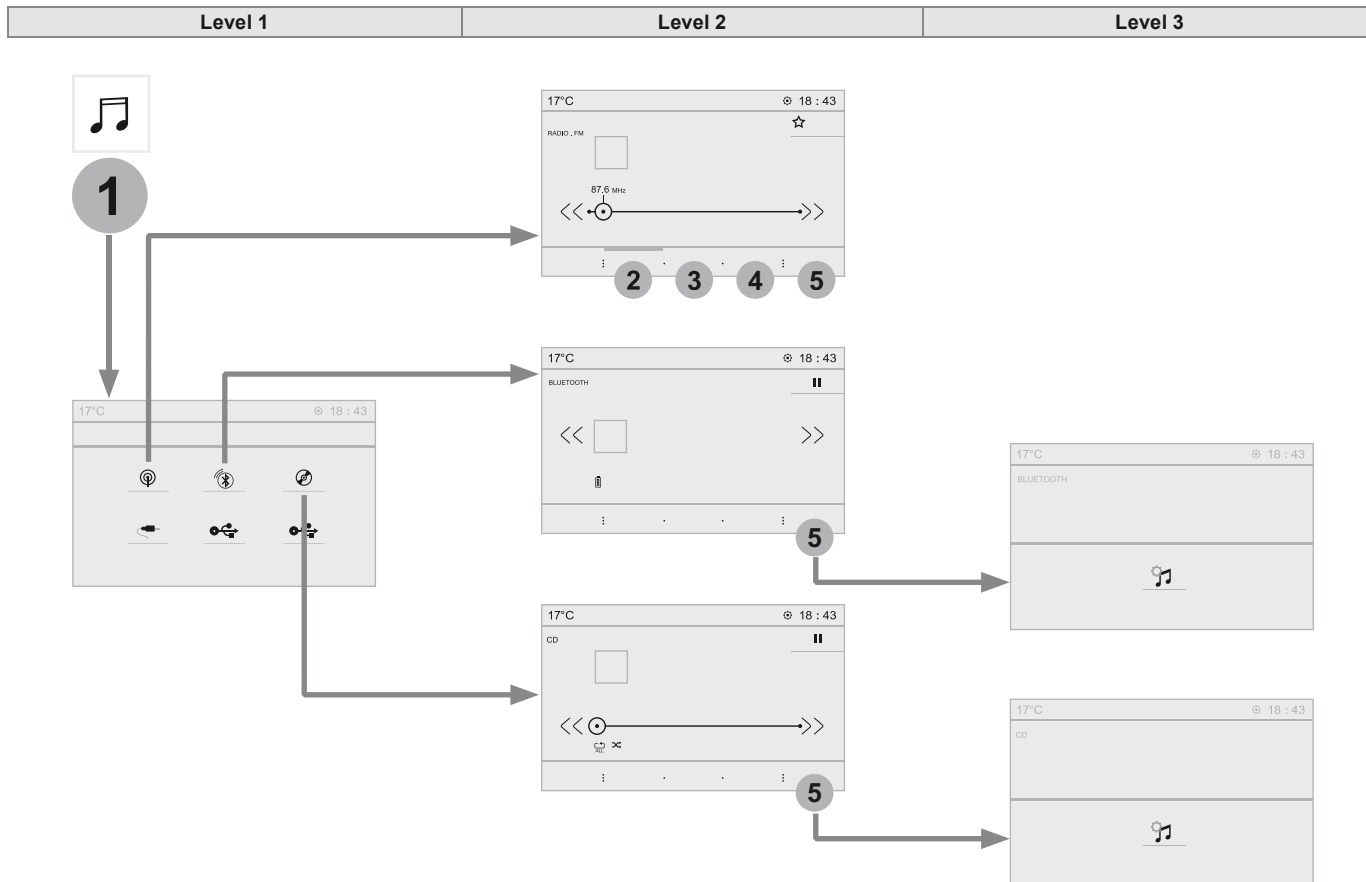
Press the back arrow to go back a level.











# Radio Media

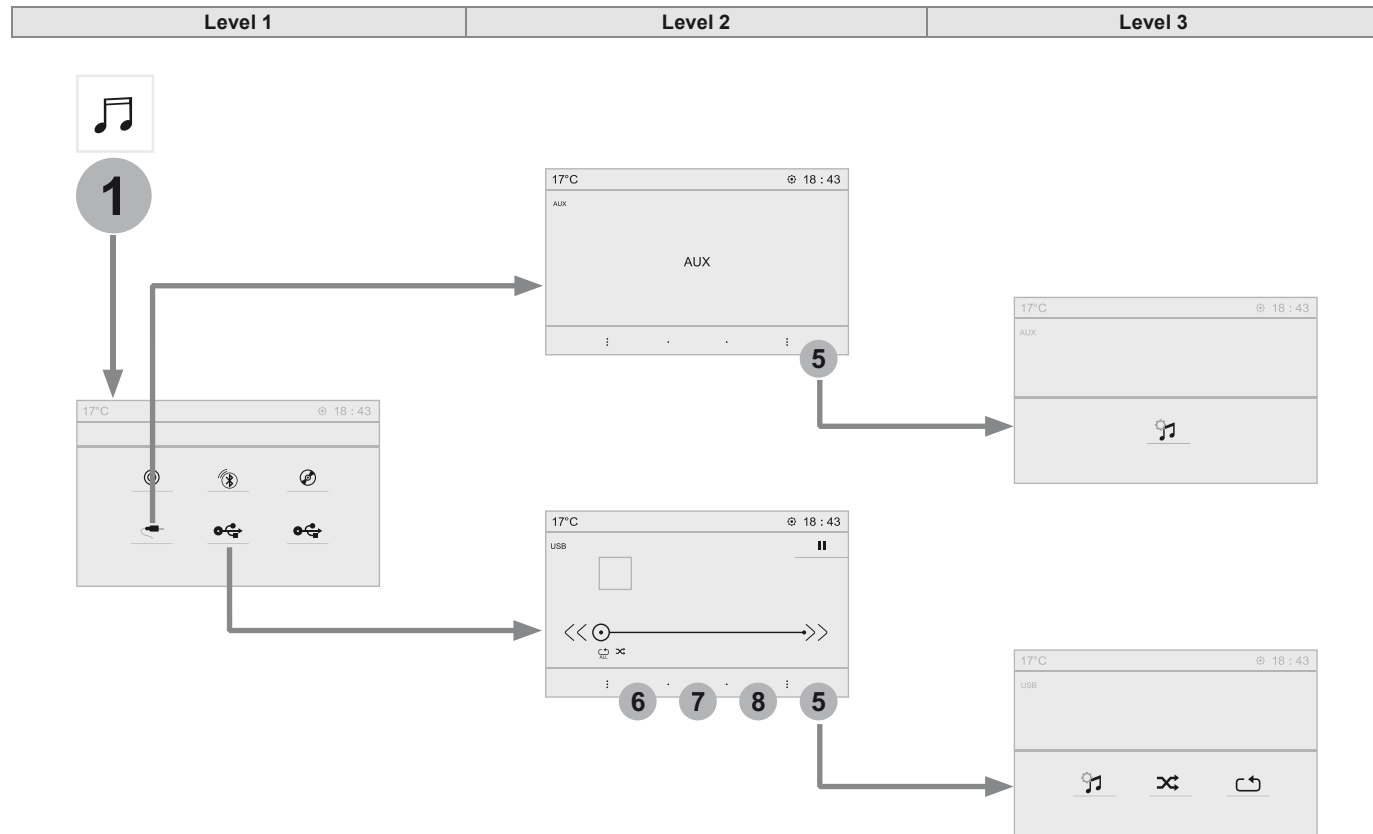
According to version








Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 <b>1</b>	Radio Media ↓ <b>SOURCES</b>	 <b>Radio</b>		Select change of source.
		 <b>Bluetooth</b>		
		 <b>CD</b>		
		 <b>AUX</b>		
		 <b>USB</b>  <b>iPod</b>		
 <b>2</b>	Radio Media ↓ <b>Frequency</b>		<b>FM / DAB / AM</b>	Display the current radio station.
 <b>3</b>	Radio Media ↓ <b>List</b>			Update the list according to the stations received.
		 <b>Preset</b>		Make a short press to preset the station.
 <b>4</b>	Radio Media ↓ <b>Preset</b>			Select a preset station or preset a station.
 <b>5</b>	Radio Media ↓ <b>OPTIONS</b>	 <b>AM band / DAB band / FM band</b>		Press the Band button to change waveband.
		 <b>Audio settings</b>		Configure the audio settings.
		 <b>News</b>		Activate or deactivate the options.
		 <b>TA</b>		
		 <b>RDS</b>		
 <b>FM-DAB Follow-up</b>				
 MHz KHz	Radio Media ↓ <b>87.5 MHz</b>			Enter a frequency of the FM and AM bands on the virtual keypad.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments	
 <b>1</b> 	Radio Media ↓ SOURCES ↓ Radio	<b>2</b>	Frequency			Display the current radio station.	
		<b>3</b>	List			Display the list of stations received.	
		<b>4</b>	Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.	
		<b>5</b>	OPTIONS		FM band / DAB band / AM band		Press the band button to change band.
					Audio settings		Configure the audio settings.
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	News		Activate or deactivate the options.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	TA						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	RDS						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	FM-DAB Follow-up						
 <b>1</b> 	Radio Media ↓ SOURCES ↓ Bluetooth	<b>5</b>	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.	
 <b>1</b> 	Radio Media ↓ SOURCES ↓ CD					Display the details of the music being played.	
		<b>5</b>	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.	





Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ <b>SOURCES</b> ↓ AUX	<b>5</b>	<b>OPTIONS</b>		<b>Audio settings</b>	Configure the audio settings.
	Radio Media ↓ <b>SOURCES</b> ↓ USB	<b>6</b>	<b>Player</b>			Display the details of the music being played.
<b>1</b>		<b>7</b>	<b>Tracks list</b>			Display the current selection.
		<b>8</b>	<b>Library</b>			Display the music library.
		<b>5</b>	<b>OPTIONS</b>		<b>Audio settings</b>	Configure the audio settings.

## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

### Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

### Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.



Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

5

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

**i** RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Display text information



The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

5

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**NEWS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TAalert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

5

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

**i** On the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.

On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

**!** The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

**i** On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

**!** Digital radio provides higher quality reception.  
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

**5**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

### FM-DAB Follow-up

**i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.  
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

**5**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".



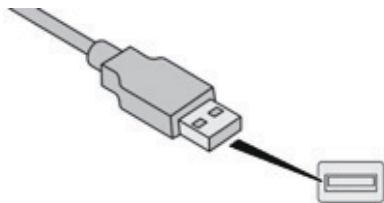
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

**i** If the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.  
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

**!** If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media

### USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

### Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

### Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the **"SOURCES"** button.

Choose the source.

### Bluetooth Streaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

**!** Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

**i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

**!** The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied. Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav, .wma, .aac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps. It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type. The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

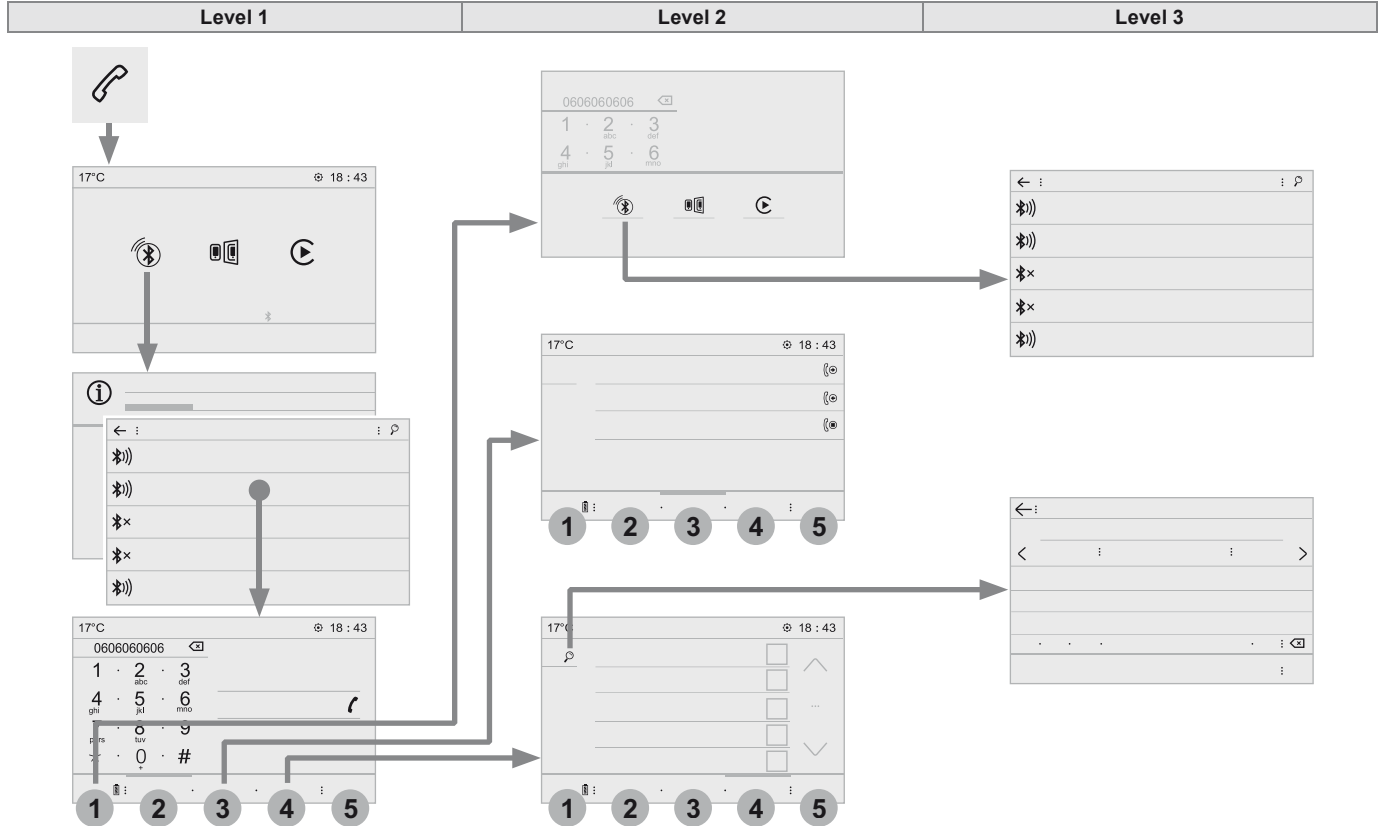
Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

**i** It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.





















In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly. It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

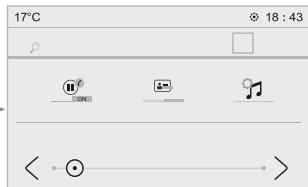
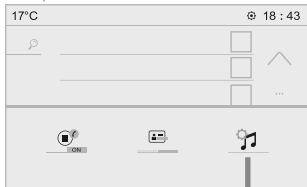
# Telephone










According to version



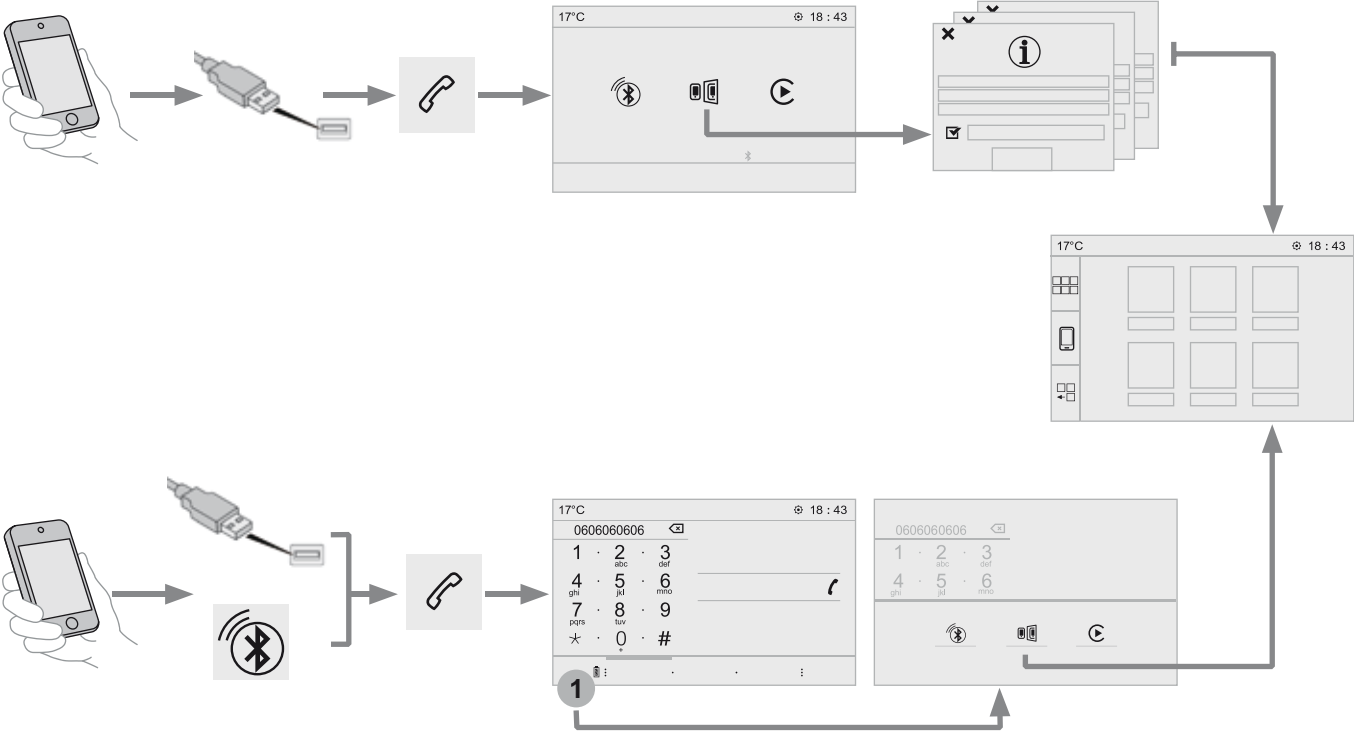


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  <b>1</b>	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>Bluetooth search</b> ↓ <b>PHONE</b>	 <b>Bluetooth connection</b>	 <b>Search</b>		Start the search for a device to be connected.	
			 <b>Delete</b>		Delete one or more devices.	
		 <b>MirrorLink</b>			Open the MirrorLink function.	
		 <b>CarPlay</b>			Open the CarPlay function.	
  <b>2</b>	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>Bluetooth search</b> ↓ <b>Keypad</b>				Enter a telephone number.	
  <b>3</b>	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>Bluetooth search</b> ↓ <b>Recent calls</b>	<b>All</b>			View the calls according to the presentation selected. Select a contact to make the call.	
		 <b>Outgoing</b>				
		 <b>Missed</b>				
		 <b>Incoming</b>				
  <b>4</b>	<b>Telephone</b> ↓ <b>Bluetooth search</b> ↓ <b>Contacts</b>	 <b>Search</b>	 <b>Confirm</b>		Search for a contact in the contacts directory.	
		 <b>Telephone</b>			Go to the details of the contact sheet.	



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 <b>5</b> 	<p>Telephone</p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>OPTIONS</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>On hold (auto)</b></p>		<p><b>ON - OFF</b></p>	<p>Activate or deactivate the automatic placing on hold of the current conversation.</p>
 <b>5</b> 	<p>Telephone</p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>OPTIONS</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Sort contacts by name</b></p> <p><b>Sort contacts by first name</b></p>			<p>Sort the contacts by Surname-first name or First name-surname.</p>
 <b>5</b> 	<p>Telephone</p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>OPTIONS</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Ring volume</b></p>			<p>Adjust the volume of the ringtone.</p>

# MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen. The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; **update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system**. For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

### Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and end the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that "Bluetooth®" be started on the smartphone

### Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



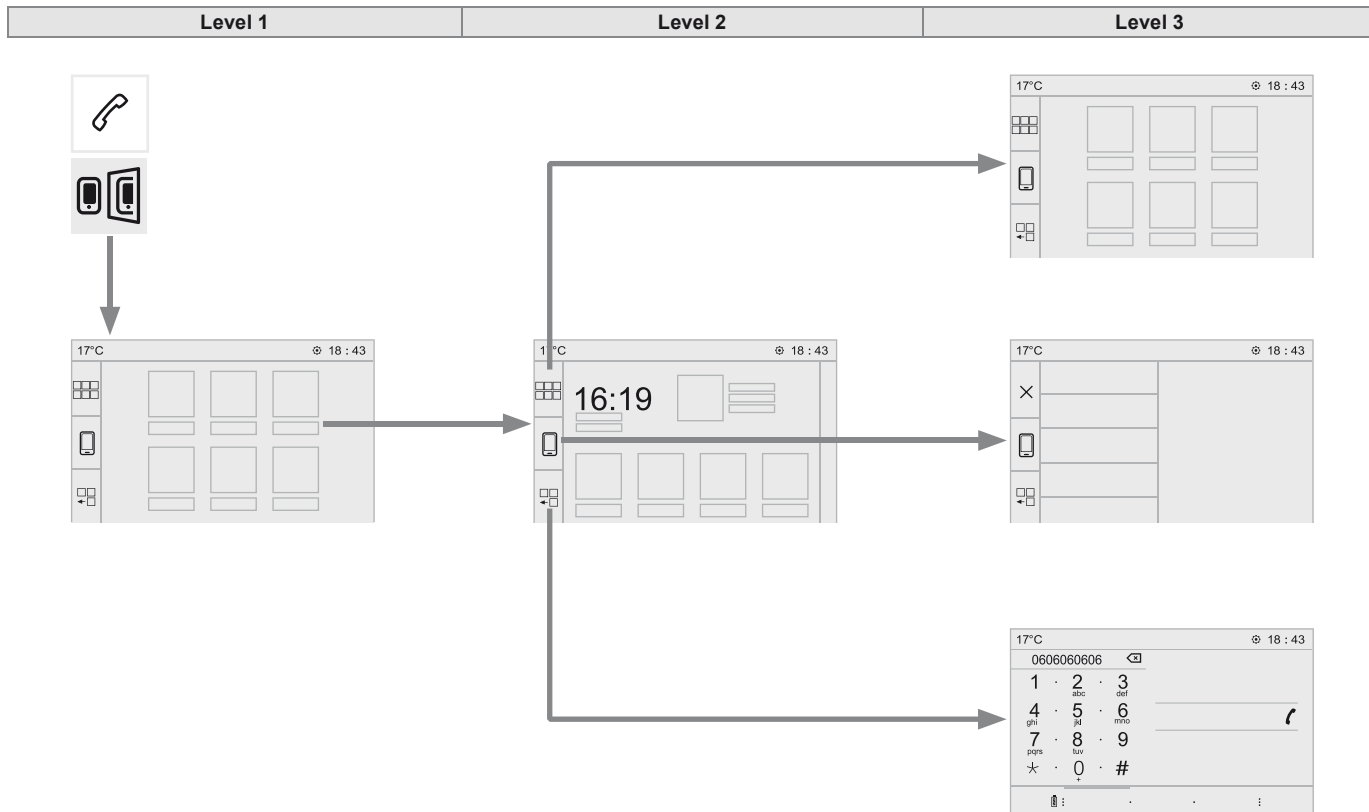
Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.






Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

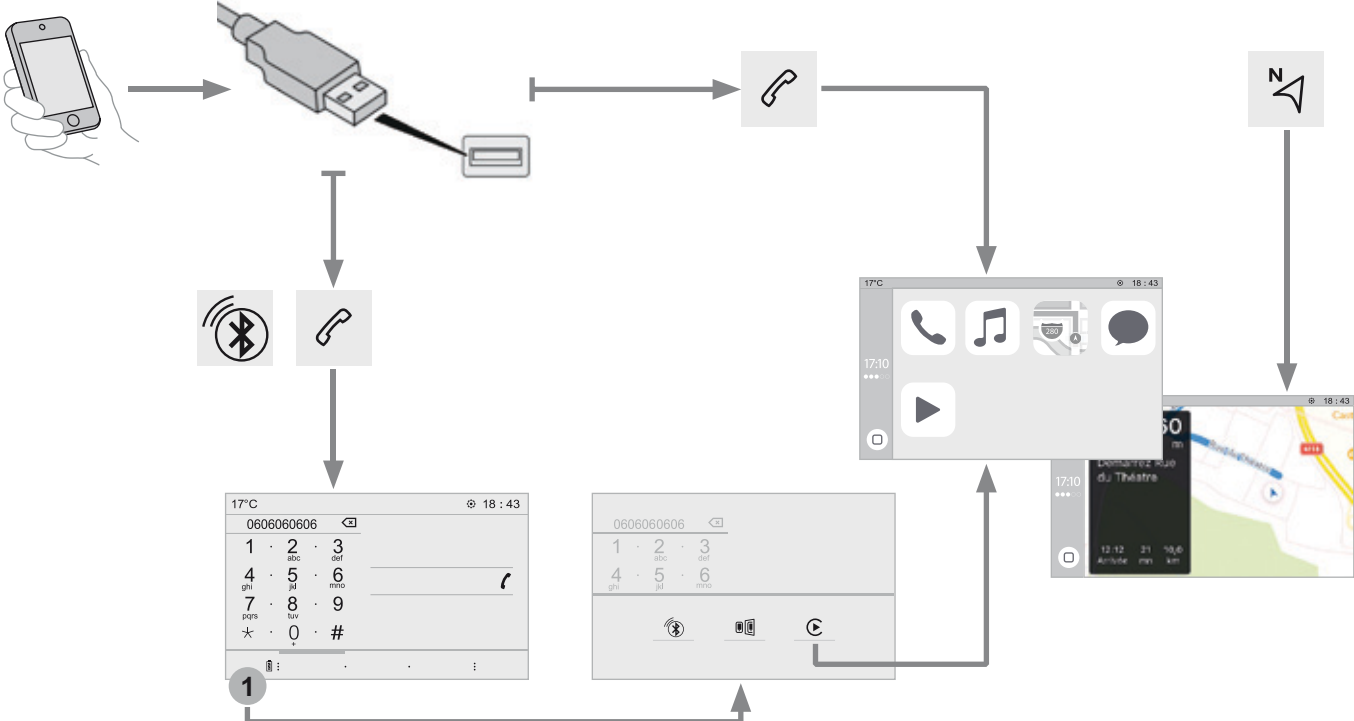


There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
 	<p><b>Telephone</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>MirrorLink™</b></p>				Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.
					Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
					Go to the primary page of the "Telephone" menu.

# CarPlay® smartphone connection





**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

**i** On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**. The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

### To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

**!** The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

**!** The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

**i** The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

## Managing paired telephones

**i** This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

**1**

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

## Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.



Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

## Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



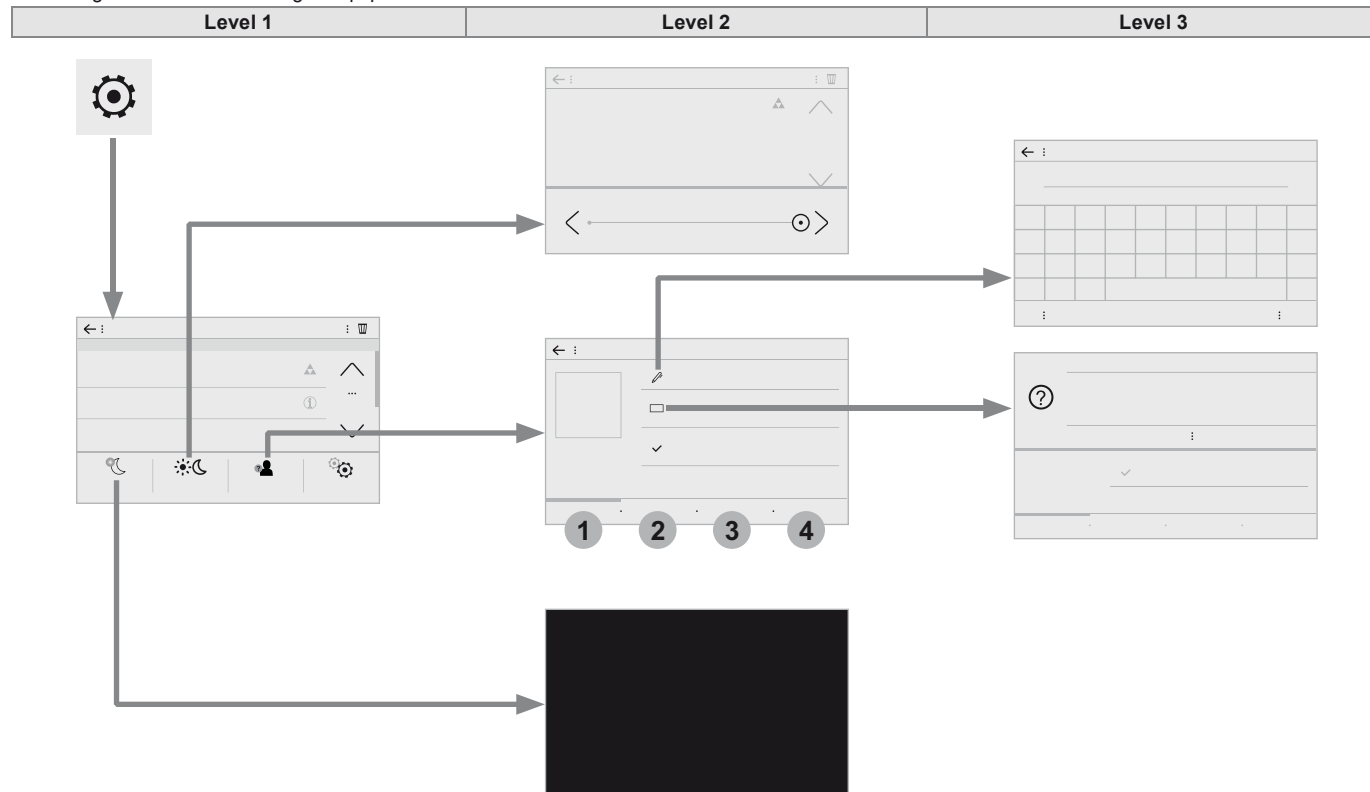
Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.






















Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

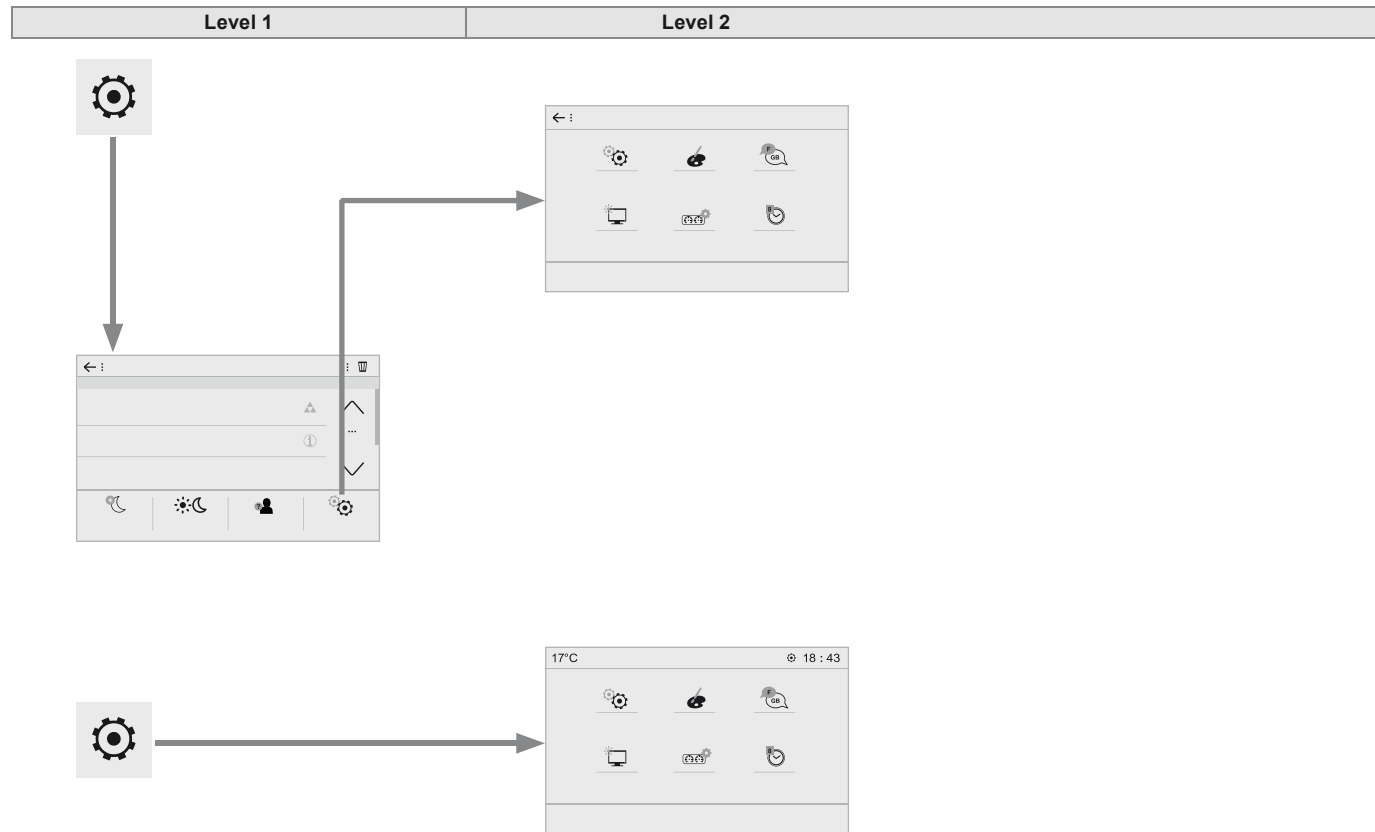
# Settings

According to version / according to equipment











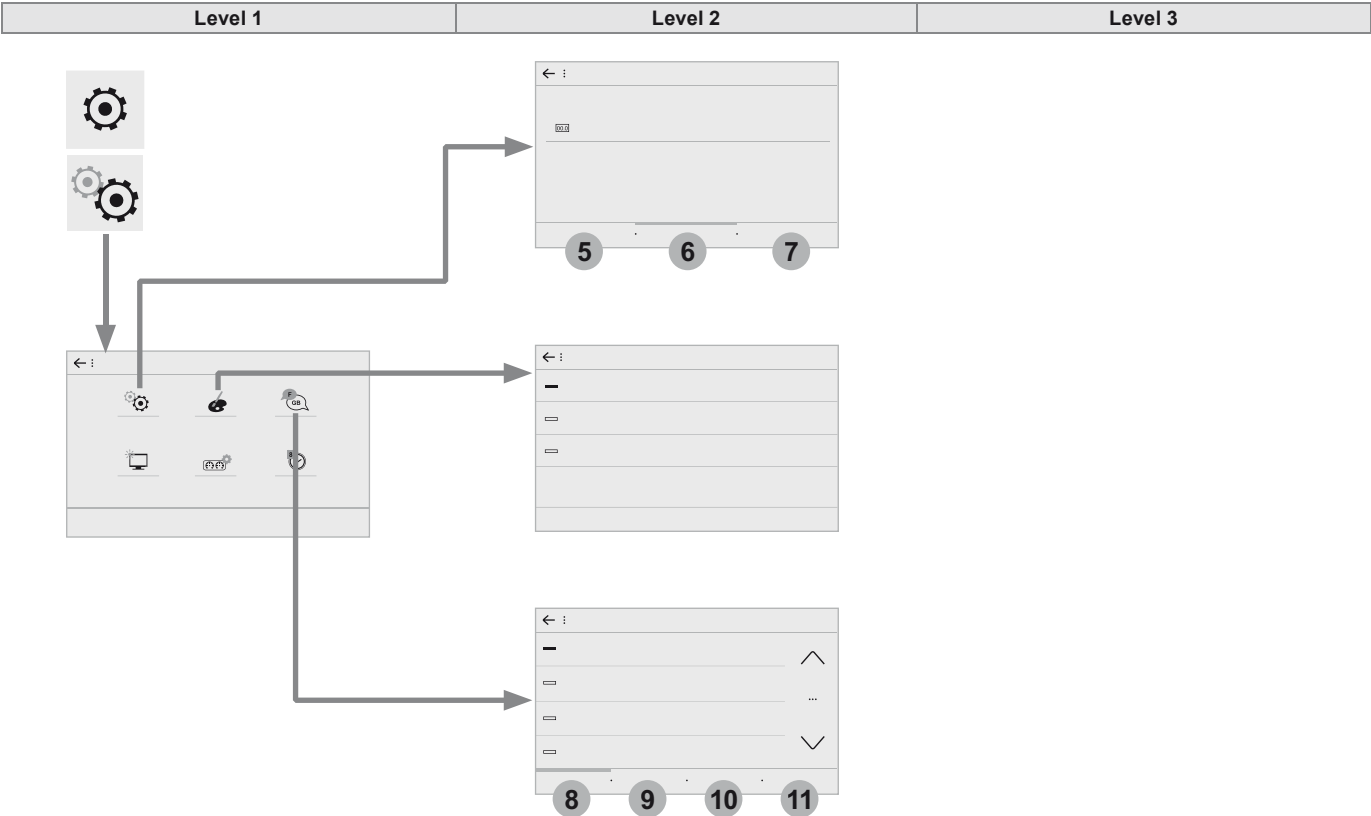
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments		
 	<b>Settings</b> ↓ <b>Brightness</b>		<b>Ambience</b>			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.		
 	<b>Settings</b> ↓ <b>Profiles</b>		<b>Profile 1</b>			Select a profile.		
			<b>Profile 2</b>					
			<b>Profile 3</b>					
			<b>Common profile</b>					
			<b>Name:</b>	 	<b>Profile name modification</b>			Configure the profiles.
			<b>Reset the profile</b>		<b>Yes / No</b>			
				<b>Profile activated</b>				Activate/deactivate the profile selected.
								Save the settings.
 	<b>Settings</b> ↓ <b>Dark</b>					Function which switches off the lit display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.		































According to equipment

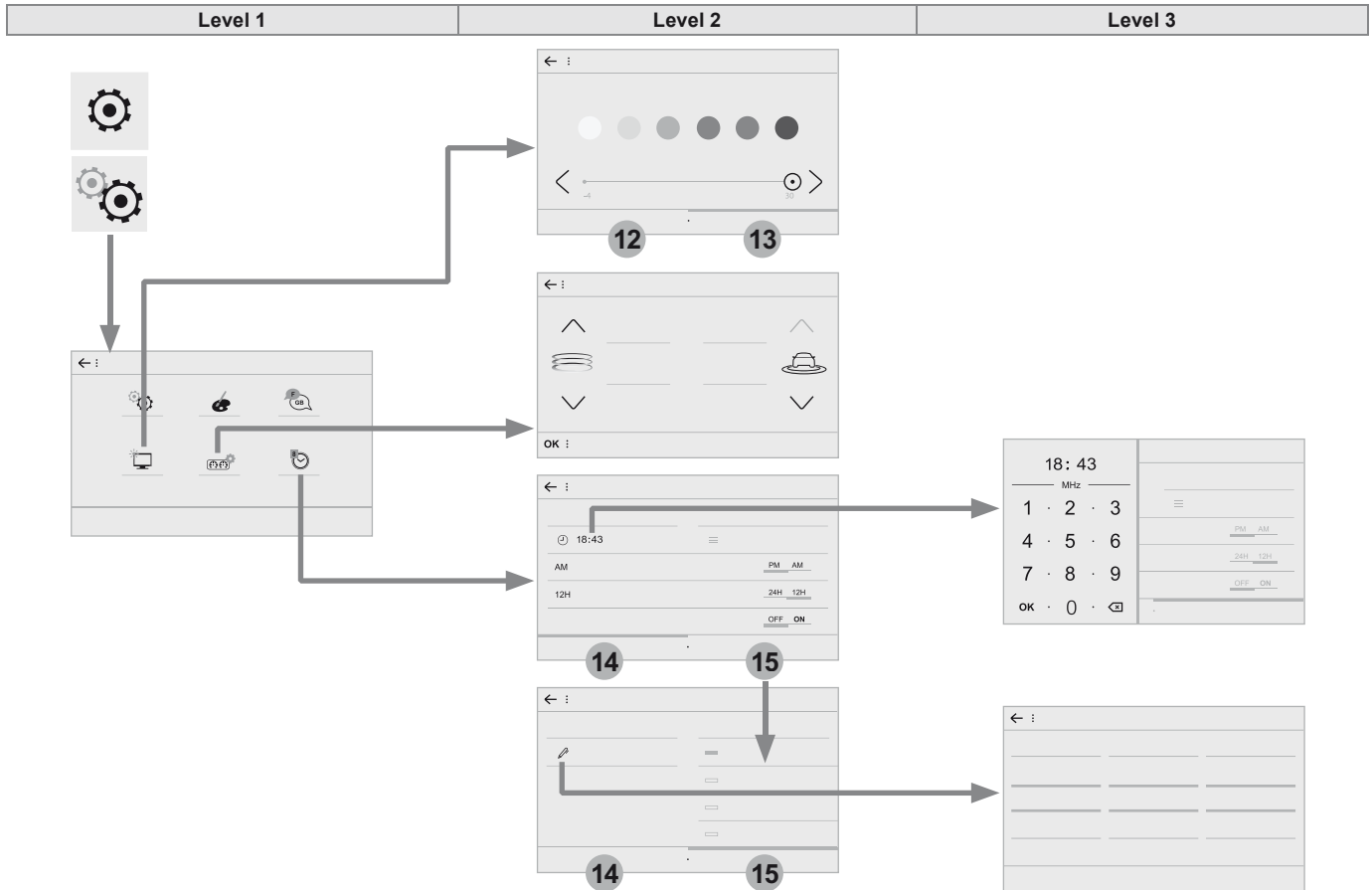




















Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 	<b>Settings</b> ↓ <b>Configuration</b>		<b>System configuration</b>	Configure certain system parameters.
			<b>Ambience</b>	Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
			<b>Language</b>	Select the display language for the the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			<b>Screen configuration</b>	Set the configuration of the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			<b>Customization</b>	Configure the instrument panel for a personalised display.
			<b>Date and time</b>	Set the date and time and select the display format.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments		
  	Settings ↓ Configuration ↓ System configuration		Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Configure the display units for the distance, consumption and temperature.		
					Temperatures			
					Factory settings		Reset	Restore the original settings.
					System info		View	Consult the version of the different modules installed in the system.
						Save the parameters.		
  	Settings ↓ Configuration ↓ Ambience					Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.		
								
								
								Confirm the selection and start the change of ambience.
  	Settings ↓ Configuration ↓ Language		All			Select the display language for the screen and/or the instrument panel.		
				Europe				
				Asia				
				America				
								Save the parameter.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	Settings ↓ Configuration ↓ Screen configuration	12	Brightness			Select the display brightness level.
		13	Animation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Automatic scrolling	Activate or deactivate the parameters.
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Animated transitions	
			←			
  	Settings ↓ Configuration ↓ Temperature conditioning		Customization			Choose and select the display information required.
		OK	Confirm			Confirm the selections.
  	Settings ↓ Configuration ↓ Date and time	14	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Set the time zone.
					AM	Select the display format.
					12h	
					GPS Synchronisation	Activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the satellites.
				←		Save the settings.
		15	Date		Date	Set the date and select the display format.
					Setting the date	
←				Save the settings.		

## Profile settings

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

**1**

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

## Adjust the brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

5

Press "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

6

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (according to version).

7

Press "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".



Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to set the brightness of the screen and/or instrument panel (according to version).



Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

## Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.





Select "**Language**" to change the language.




Press the back arrow to confirm.


## Setting the time


 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.


 Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.


 Press "**Date and time**".


 Select "**Time**".


 Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.


 Press "**OK**" to save the time.

 Press this button to define the time zone.


 Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).


 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with satellites (UTC).


 Press the back arrow to save the settings.

 The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).


## Setting the date


 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.


 Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.


 Press "**Date and time**".


 Select "**Date**".

 Press this button to define the date.

 Press the back arrow to save the date.

 Select the display format of the date.

 Press the back arrow again to confirm.

 Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated. The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.



# Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

## Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

## Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

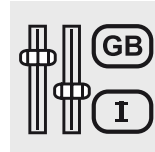
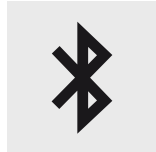
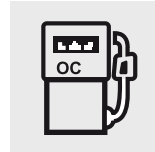
## Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.

## Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

# Bluetooth® audio system



**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**!** Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.  
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

	Contents
First steps	148
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	149
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	150
Menus	151
Radio	152
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	154
Media	156
Telephone	161
Frequently asked questions	166

**i** The different functions and adjustments described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**i** To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

## First steps



Press: On / Off  
Rotate: adjust volume.

**SRC /**

Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming).  
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:  
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.  
Activation / Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

**LIST**

**Radio:**  
Short press: display the list of radio stations.  
Long press: update the list.  
**Media:**  
Short press: display the list of folders.  
Long press: display the sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:  
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

**OK**

Confirm or display contextual menu.

**1**

Buttons 1 to 6.  
Short press: select the preset radio station.  
Long press: preset a station.



**Radio:**  
Automatic step by step search up / down for radio stations.  
**Media:**  
Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.  
Scroll in a list.



**Radio:**  
Manual step by step search up / down for radio stations.  
Select previous / next MP3 track.

**Media:**  
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist on the USB device.  
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.  
Go up one level (menu or folder).

**MENU**

Access to main menu.

**TA**

Activate / Deactivate TA (traffic announcements)  
Long press: select type of announcement.

**BAND**

Select waveband: FM / DAB / AM.



## Steering mounted controls - Type 1



### Radio:

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

### Media:

Select of the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

### LIST

### Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

### Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the sorting options.

### SRC /

### Other than telephone calls:

Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "Telephone" menu is open.  
Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

### In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

### During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.

### OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.



## Steering mounted controls - Type 2

### MENU

Access to the main menu.



Increase volume.



Mute / Restore sound.



Decrease volume.

### SRC /

#### Other than telephone call:

Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.  
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.

#### In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.  
Long press: reject the call.

#### During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.  
Long press: end the call.



Start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

### LIST

#### Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.  
Long press: update the list.

#### Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.  
Long press: display the sorting options.



#### Radio:

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

#### Media:

Select the previous / next track.  
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.



# Menus

Depending on version.



**"Multimedia"**: Media settings, Radio settings.

**MENU**

Press the **"MENU"** button.



**"Telephone"**: Call, Directory management, Telephone management, End call.



Move from one menu to another.



**"Trip computer"**.

**OK**

Enter a menu.



**"Maintenance"**: Diagnosis, Warning log, ...



**"Connections"**: Manage connections, search for devices.



**"Personalisation-configuration"**: Define the vehicle settings, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

# Radio

## Selecting a station

**SRC /** Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

**BAND** Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

**◀▶** Press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search for radio stations.

**▲▼** Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

**LIST** Press this button to display the list of stations received locally. To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

## RDS

**i** The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

**i** If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears barred in the screen.

**!** RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

## Short procedure

In **"Radio"** mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

## Long procedure

**MENU** Press the **"MENU"** button.

**◀▶** Select **"Audio functions"**.

**OK** Press **OK**.

**◀▶** Select the **"FM waveband preferences"** function.

**OK** Press **OK**.

**◀▶** Select **"RDS"**.

**OK** Press **OK**, RDS is displayed in the screen.

## Receiving TA messages

**!** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

**!** Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

**TA** Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

## Receiving INFO messages

**i** The INFO function gives priority to TA traffic announcements. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

**TA** Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

**▲**  
**▼** Select or deselect categories.

**OK** Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

## Display RADIO TEXT

**i** Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

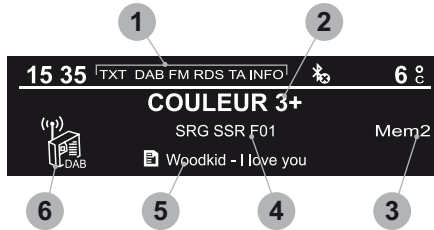
**OK** With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

**▲**  
**▼** Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

# DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

According to version

**i** If the current "DAB" radio station is not available on "FM", "DAB FM" is struck out.



**1** Display options: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

**2** Display the name of the current radio station.

**3** Preset radio station, buttons 1 to 6. Short press: select the preset radio station. Long press: preset a radio station.

**4** Display the name of the multiplex service being used.

**5** Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

**6** Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

**i** When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



**LIST** Display the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

## Terrestrial digital radio

**i** Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO). The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

**BAND** Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB,...)

**BAND**

**◀▶** Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

**▲▼** Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex service".

**TA** Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).

## DAB / FM tracking

**i** When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.  
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

**i** "DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.  
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if there is one).  
When "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

**i** If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.

**!** If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Press the "**MENU**" button.

**MENU**

Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.



Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm



# Media

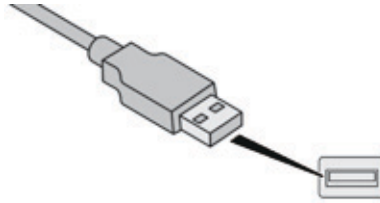
## USB port

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket, depending on version.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

**i** Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory), which can take from a few seconds to several minutes on the first connection. Reducing the number of non-music files and the number of folders reduces this waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.



Insert a USB memory stick into the USB port or connect a USB peripheral device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

**i** While connected by USB, the portable device may be charged automatically.

## Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal:** the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random:** the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media:** all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat:** the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

**OK**

Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.



Press this button to select the play mode.

**OK**

Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

## Choosing a track to play



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

## File classification



Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Choose by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**".\*



Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

## Playing files



Make a long press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.



Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.



Press one of these buttons to go to the next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**".\* in the list.

\* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

## Jack auxiliary (AUX) socket



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, ...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

**i** Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

**SRC /** Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

**!** Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

## CD player

Insert circular compact discs only. Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player. Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

**!** External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

**SRC /** To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.

**◀▶** Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

**LIST** Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

**◀▶** Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or fast back.

## Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 CD compilation in the player. The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

**!** On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played. While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed. All of the files are displayed on a single level.



**SRC /**

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

**LIST**

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the audio system.

Connect the telephone.  
(Refer to the "**Pairing a telephone**" section).

**SRC /**

Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SOURCE\*** button.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls\*\*. Contextual information may be displayed in the screen.

\* In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

\*\* If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

The CD player can play files with .mp3, .wma, .wav and .aac file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).

Other file types (mp4, ...) may be played.

Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHZ.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3, .wma, .wav, .cbr, .vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

No other file types (.mp4, ...) can be played.

Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHZ.

File names should have less than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g.: " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, the ISO 9660 level 1. 2 or Joliet file format is recommended when recording.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.



Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).



It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

# Telephone

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your a Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on

**i** Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

**i** The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.  
Refer to the instructions for your telephone and to your service provider for the services available to you.

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

### Procedure from the system

**MENU**

Press the **MENU** button.



Select the "**Connections**" menu.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Search for a Bluetooth device**".

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

### Completing the pairing

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), check that the code displayed in the system and the telephone is the same and confirm.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.

A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

### Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", "**Calls list**", "**View paired devices**".

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

**i** Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

\* If your telephone is fully compatible.

## Managing connections

**i** The telephone connection automatically includes hands-free operation and audio streaming. The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

**MENU**

Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Connections**".

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.



Indicates that a device is connected.



A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:

- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.



Indicates the audio streaming profile.



Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.



Select a telephone.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.



Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.



When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the **"YES"** tab in the screen using the buttons.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

**SRC /**

Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

## Making a call

In the **"Telephone"** menu.

Select **"Call"**.

Select **"Dial"**.

Or

Select **"Directory"**.

Or

Select **"Calls list"**.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

**SRC /**

Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

## Ending a call

In the **"Telephone"** menu.

Select **"End call"**.

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

**SRC /**

During a call, press one of the buttons for more than 2 seconds.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth, you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

## Managing calls

**OK**

During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

## Hang up



In the contextual menu, select "**End call**" to end the call.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

## Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

## Telephone mode



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

In some cases telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

## Interactive voice response



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

## Dual call



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and confirm to return to a call left on hold.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

## Directory



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.



Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.



Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

**OK**

Confirm with **OK**.

**MENU**

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

## Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.

**i** Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

## Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

## Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.



QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, underground car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault in the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

## Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is broken.	The state of charge of the device may be too low.	Charge the battery of the portable device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section.</li> <li>- Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul>
The sound from the CD is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert a good quality CD and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (base, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manual activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

## Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call your voicemail box, via the telephone menu, using the number supplied by your service provider.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system AND of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

Optional Digital tuner (DAB) (RU-9472 variant has DAB / RU9475 does not have DAB)

O modelo RD6 possui duas versões identificadas pelo Part number do produto:

- RU-9472: Possui a opção de sintonia digital FM (DAB);
- RU-9475: Não possui a opção de sintonia digital FM (DAB).



Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 240/2000, e atende aos requisitos técnicos mínimos.

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL: [www.anatel.gov.br](http://www.anatel.gov.br)







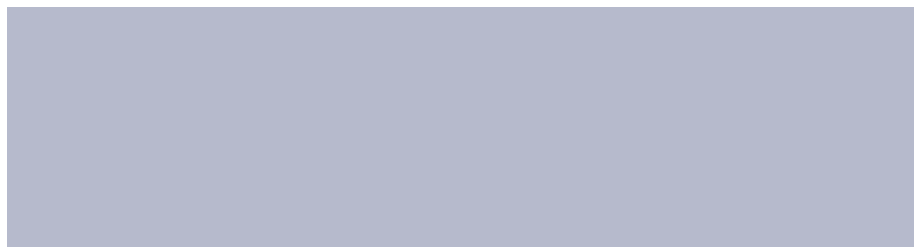
Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France

Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - [www.citroen.com](http://www.citroen.com)

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z







Cesky [Czech] [Danish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH tímto prohlašuje, že tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Underlegtede Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH seadme "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνικά [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ "PSA RCC" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΠΙΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklarē, ka "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaruoju, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malta [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jiddeklara li dan "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jikkonforma mal-ligijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimanti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Az alírott Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozik, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadczam, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH izjavlja, da je ta "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovenský [Slovak]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" laite on direktiivin 1999/5/ETY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH yfir því að "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er í samræmi við grunntölur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved at utstyret "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

	<p>ECE type-approval certificate No. is 057902 (concerning the type-approval of an electric/electronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)</p> <p>emitted frequency range and power:</p> <p>Frequency band Radiated Power [EIRP] Hints / Restriction</p> <p>2402 MHz – 2480 MHz WiFi &lt; 51mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth &lt; 2.6 mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 &amp; A2 Antenna configuration: internal antenna</p> <p>Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.</p>
Brazil	 <p>*Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.*</p> <p>This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p> <p>R= Radio Type Approval Number: <b>BBB666666666</b></p>
Canada	<p>T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: <b>X-JJ-5N1NN AAA</b> NOM-121-SC11-2009</p> <p>La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.</p> <p>본產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十二條、第十四條等條文規定</p>
Japan	
Mexico	
South Korea	<p>1. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。</p> <p>2. 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。</p> <p>前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。</p> <p>低功率射頻電機須符合合法通信工業、科學及管理用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。</p>
Taiwan	
USA / Canada	<p>This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).</p> <p>Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p> <p>Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by (Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH) may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.</p>